

NFPA[®] 780

Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems

2023 Edition



NFPA, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471
An International Codes and Standards Organization

IMPORTANT NOTICES AND DISCLAIMERS CONCERNING NFPA® STANDARDS

NFPA® codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides (“NFPA Standards”), of which the document contained herein is one, are developed through a consensus standards development process approved by the American National Standards Institute. This process brings together volunteers representing varied viewpoints and interests to achieve consensus on fire and other safety issues. While the NFPA administers the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in the development of consensus, it does not independently test, evaluate, or verify the accuracy of any information or the soundness of any judgments contained in NFPA Standards.

The NFPA disclaims liability for any personal injury, property, or other damages of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use of, or reliance on NFPA Standards. The NFPA also makes no guaranty or warranty as to the accuracy or completeness of any information published herein.

In issuing and making NFPA Standards available, the NFPA is not undertaking to render professional or other services for or on behalf of any person or entity. Nor is the NFPA undertaking to perform any duty owed by any person or entity to someone else. Anyone using this document should rely on his or her own independent judgment or, as appropriate, seek the advice of a competent professional in determining the exercise of reasonable care in any given circumstances.

The NFPA has no power, nor does it undertake, to police or enforce compliance with the contents of NFPA Standards. Nor does the NFPA list, certify, test, or inspect products, designs, or installations for compliance with this document. Any certification or other statement of compliance with the requirements of this document shall not be attributable to the NFPA and is solely the responsibility of the certifier or maker of the statement.

REVISION SYMBOLS IDENTIFYING CHANGES FROM THE PREVIOUS EDITION

Text revisions are shaded. A **Δ** before a section number indicates that words within that section were deleted and a **Δ** to the left of a table or figure number indicates a revision to an existing table or figure. When a chapter was heavily revised, the entire chapter is marked throughout with the **Δ** symbol. Where one or more sections were deleted, a **•** is placed between the remaining sections. Chapters, annexes, sections, figures, and tables that are new are indicated with an **N**.

Note that these indicators are a guide. Rearrangement of sections may not be captured in the markup, but users can view complete revision details in the First and Second Draft Reports located in the archived revision information section of each code at www.nfpa.org/docinfo. Any subsequent changes from the NFPA Technical Meeting, Tentative Interim Amendments, and Errata are also located there.

REMINDER: UPDATING OF NFPA STANDARDS

Users of NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides (“NFPA Standards”) should be aware that these documents may be superseded at any time by the issuance of a new edition, may be amended with the issuance of Tentative Interim Amendments (TIAs), or be corrected by Errata. It is intended that through regular revisions and amendments, participants in the NFPA standards development process consider the then-current and available information on incidents, materials, technologies, innovations, and methods as these develop over time and that NFPA Standards reflect this consideration. Therefore, any previous edition of this document no longer represents the current NFPA Standard on the subject matter addressed. NFPA encourages the use of the most current edition of any NFPA Standard [as it may be amended by TIA(s) or Errata] to take advantage of current experience and understanding. An official NFPA Standard at any point in time consists of the current edition of the document, including any issued TIAs and Errata then in effect.

To determine whether an NFPA Standard has been amended through the issuance of TIAs or corrected by Errata, visit the “Codes & Standards” section at www.nfpa.org.

ADDITIONAL IMPORTANT NOTICES AND DISCLAIMERS CONCERNING NFPA® STANDARDS

Updating of NFPA Standards

Users of NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides (“NFPA Standards”) should be aware that these documents may be superseded at any time by the issuance of a new edition, may be amended with the issuance of Tentative Interim Amendments (TIAs), or be corrected by Errata. It is intended that through regular revisions and amendments, participants in the NFPA standards development process consider the then-current and available information on incidents, materials, technologies, innovations, and methods as these develop over time and that NFPA Standards reflect this consideration. Therefore, any previous edition of this document no longer represents the current NFPA Standard on the subject matter addressed. NFPA encourages the use of the most current edition of any NFPA Standard [as it may be amended by TIA(s) or Errata] to take advantage of current experience and understanding. An official NFPA Standard at any point in time consists of the current edition of the document, including any issued TIAs and Errata then in effect.

To determine whether an NFPA Standard has been amended through the issuance of TIAs or corrected by Errata, visit the “Codes & Standards” section at www.nfpa.org.

Interpretations of NFPA Standards

A statement, written or oral, that is not processed in accordance with Section 6 of the Regulations Governing the Development of NFPA Standards shall not be considered the official position of NFPA or any of its Committees and shall not be considered to be, nor be relied upon as, a Formal Interpretation.

Patents

The NFPA does not take any position with respect to the validity of any patent rights referenced in, related to, or asserted in connection with an NFPA Standard. The users of NFPA Standards bear the sole responsibility for determining the validity of any such patent rights, as well as the risk of infringement of such rights, and the NFPA disclaims liability for the infringement of any patent resulting from the use of or reliance on NFPA Standards.

NFPA adheres to the policy of the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) regarding the inclusion of patents in American National Standards (“the ANSI Patent Policy”), and hereby gives the following notice pursuant to that policy:

NOTICE: The user’s attention is called to the possibility that compliance with an NFPA Standard may require use of an invention covered by patent rights. NFPA takes no position as to the validity of any such patent rights or as to whether such patent rights constitute or include essential patent claims under the ANSI Patent Policy. If, in connection with the ANSI Patent Policy, a patent holder has filed a statement of willingness to grant licenses under these rights on reasonable and nondiscriminatory terms and conditions to applicants desiring to obtain such a license, copies of such filed statements can be obtained, on request, from NFPA. For further information, contact the NFPA at the address listed below.

Law and Regulations

Users of NFPA Standards should consult applicable federal, state, and local laws and regulations. NFPA does not, by the publication of its codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides, intend to urge action that is not in compliance with applicable laws, and these documents may not be construed as doing so.

Copyrights

NFPA Standards are copyrighted. They are made available for a wide variety of both public and private uses. These include both use, by reference, in laws and regulations, and use in private self-regulation, standardization, and the promotion of safe practices and methods. By making these documents available for use and adoption by public authorities and private users, the NFPA does not waive any rights in copyright to these documents.

Use of NFPA Standards for regulatory purposes should be accomplished through adoption by reference. The term “adoption by reference” means the citing of title, edition, and publishing information only. Any deletions, additions, and changes desired by the adopting authority should be noted separately in the adopting instrument. In order to assist NFPA in following the uses made of its documents, adopting authorities are requested to notify the NFPA (Attention: Secretary, Standards Council) in writing of such use. For technical assistance and questions concerning adoption of NFPA Standards, contact NFPA at the address below.

For Further Information

All questions or other communications relating to NFPA Standards and all requests for information on NFPA procedures governing its codes and standards development process, including information on the procedures for requesting Formal Interpretations, for proposing Tentative Interim Amendments, and for proposing revisions to NFPA standards during regular revision cycles, should be sent to NFPA headquarters, addressed to the attention of the Secretary, Standards Council, NFPA, 1 Batterymarch Park, P.O. Box 9101, Quincy, MA 02269-9101; email: stds_admin@nfpa.org.

For more information about NFPA, visit the NFPA website at www.nfpa.org. All NFPA codes and standards can be viewed at no cost at www.nfpa.org/docinfo.

Copyright © 2022 National Fire Protection Association®. All Rights Reserved.

NFPA® 780

Standard for the

Installation of Lightning Protection Systems

2023 Edition

This edition of NFPA 780, *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems*, was prepared by the Technical Committee on Lightning Protection. It was issued by the Standards Council on March 20, 2022, with an effective date of April 9, 2022, and supersedes all previous editions.

This edition of NFPA 780 was approved as an American National Standard on April 9, 2022.

Origin and Development of NFPA 780

NFPA first adopted *Specifications for Protection of Buildings Against Lightning* in 1904. Revised standards were adopted in 1905, 1906, 1925, 1932, and 1937. In 1945, the NFPA Committee and the parallel American Standards Association (ASA) Committee on Protection Against Lightning were reorganized and combined under the sponsorship of NFPA, the National Bureau of Standards, and the American Institute of Electrical Engineers (now the IEEE). In 1946, NFPA acted to adopt Part III and in 1947 published a revised edition incorporating this part. Further revisions recommended by the Committee were adopted by NFPA in 1949, 1950, 1951, 1952, 1957, 1959, 1963, 1965, 1968, 1975, 1977, 1980, 1983, 1986, 1989, and 1992.

Commencing with the 1992 edition of the *Lightning Protection Code*, the NFPA numerical designation of the document was changed from NFPA 78 to NFPA 780.

With the issuance of the 1995 edition, the name of the document was changed from *Lightning Protection Code* to *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems*. This change was directed by the Standards Council to make the title more accurately reflect the document's content. In addition, the council directed certain changes to the scope of the document to clarify that the document did not cover lightning protection installation requirements for early streamer emission systems or lightning dissipater array systems.

The 1997 edition of NFPA 780 incorporated editorial changes to make the document more user friendly.

In issuing this document, the Standards Council noted that lightning is a stochastic, if not capricious, natural process. Its behavior is not yet completely understood. This standard is intended to provide requirements, within the limits of the current state of knowledge, for the installation of those lightning protection systems covered by the standard.

The 2000 edition was amended to provide requirements for open structures such as those found on golf courses. A 1998 lightning flash density chart replaced the 1972 lightning frequency isokeraunic chart.

The 2004 edition reflected an extensive editorial revision of the standard to comply with the *Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents*.

Technical revisions throughout the standard included: a solid strip, main conductor was added for Class II material requirements; handrails could be used as a substitute for down conductors; additional separation was required between multiple ground rods; additional guidance was provided when installing a grounding conductor directly on bedrock; surge suppression requirements were rewritten; and titanium strike termination devices were permitted.

The 2008 edition included requirements for surge protective devices.

The definition for *lightning protection system* was revised to include *conductive structural members*. Clarification was provided to prohibit the use of ancillary metal parts as a substitute for the main conductor.

Significant changes were made to the requirements for the use of bimetallic clamps and aluminum in proximity to earth. Changes were made to better address grounding electrodes in shallow topsoil applications.

The requirements for the use of multiple ground rods were revised. Requirements were added to address proper installation of lightning protection equipment on large roof-top mechanical units. Revisions enhanced and clarified the requirements for bonding all grounded media and underground metallic piping. Guidance was provided on the use of isolating spark gaps.

Requirements for conductors and other lightning protection system hardware used near the top of a heavy-duty stack were revised. The 2008 edition also included a complete rewrite of Chapter 8, more information in Annex B, and a revision of Annex F.

The 2011 edition included the addition of two new chapters and a major change in the scope of the document. The first new chapter addressed the protection of structures housing ammunition and explosive materials. The second new chapter included requirements for providing lightning protection for wind turbines. The standard was substantially reorganized to accommodate these new chapters in a logical order.

The sections pertaining to strike termination devices, zones of protection, and the rolling sphere method were reorganized for better usability. The text qualified where a metal mast would be permitted to serve as the down conductor. The requirements for overhead ground wires and masts and overhead ground wires were relocated.

The 2011 edition clarified the requirements for strike termination devices at the eaves for a pitched roof, and a figure was added to graphically illustrate that condition. A new section on roof-top helipads provided requirements to ensure that an adequate level of protection is provided to those areas.

The Chapter 7 section on floating roof tanks was revised as a result of recent testing and research conducted for aboveground storage tanks.

The lightning risk assessment methodology provided in Annex L was completely rewritten. This annex provided both a simplified, quick-look assessment and a more detailed assessment for those requiring a more detailed analysis.

The 2014 edition reorganized Sections 4.7 and 4.8 to better align and clarify the requirements for strike termination devices. Section 4.8 was revised to clarify the requirements for protection where small objects are located on roofs. Section 4.14 was revised and reorganized to include parts of Section 4.20, and explanatory text was provided to ensure clarity, alignment, and coordination with the bonding interconnections of *NFPA 70®*, *National Electrical Code®*. Sections 4.15 through 4.21 were restructured and revised to place similar bonding requirements together to improve the flow of the document.

New subsection 4.7.13 addressed the use on buildings of fixed metal objects that have movable or rotating metal components.

Chapter 11 was added to provide lightning protection requirements and guidance for airfield lighting circuits, and to align with federal aviation requirements. Several figures were included that provided ample explanation and guidance to the user.

A new Chapter 12 addressed lightning protection systems for solar systems and arrays.

The requirements pertaining to catenary systems were reviewed, and significant annex material was provided to clarify computations for applications with metal or wood poles.

For the 2017 edition, requirements were added relative to physical on-site inspection of the completed installation and for periodic inspections or testing for compliance. New definitions included: *ground loop conductor*, *integral lightning protection system*, *mast-type lightning protection system*, *rated impulse withstand voltage level (withstand voltage) (U_w)*, *smart structure*, *solar array*, and *solar panel*.

Several figures illustrating air terminal protection for lower roof protection were updated. New requirements were established for test and connection points for concrete-encased electrodes to enable periodic maintenance and testing of the ground system. Zero property line conditions were re-evaluated and revised. Bonding requirements were added for long horizontal metal bodies on roofs. Many requirements pertaining to ungrounded metal bodies were revised and the term *isolated (ungrounded)* was deleted for consistency. Chapter 7 was rewritten. Sections in Chapter 8 pertaining to single or multiple masts, railroad tracks, installation of air terminals on earth-covered magazines, wharves, and piers for explosives operations and cranes were revised. Chapter 12 was revised to provide more specific criteria.

Annex J and Annex K were added to the 2017 edition. Annex L was revised to provide greater clarity and correlation of requirements with other lightning protection standards.

For the 2020 edition, revisions in Section 4.9 clarified general requirements for main conductors with emphasis on one-way paths, dead ends, and when upward conductor paths are permitted. Chapter 7 acknowledged lightning electromagnetic pulse (LEMP) as a source of ignition in classified locations. Revisions in Chapter 11 clarified the application of the requirements for lightning protection at airfields. A new Annex N provided guidance on lightning protection of nonmetallic tanks containing

combustible or flammable materials. Further study and public input regarding protection of these tanks was deemed necessary before requirements can be added to the body of the standard.

The 2023 edition has added requirements for lightning protection for additions to a protected structure. The definitions for *surge protective device*, *surge arrestor*, and *surge protector* have been revised, and the use of the proper terms corrected throughout the standard. Prescriptive and performance criteria have been added for each surge protective device. Definitions for various connectors have been added to clarify the proper application of NFPA 780 connector requirements. Requirements for protecting tank batteries have also been added.

Technical Committee on Lightning Protection

Christine T. Porter, *Chair*

Intertek Testing Services, WA [RT]
Rep. Intertek Testing Services

Daniel Ashton, Lumen Technologies, Inc. /Centurylink, TX [U]
Samuel Barrack, Consolidated Nuclear Security, LLC, TN [U]
Christopher Batchelor, US Department of the Navy, MD [E]
Matthew Caie, nVent/Pentair/ERICO, Inc., OH [M]
Joanie A. Campbell, US Department of the Air Force, FL [E]
Josephine Covino, US Department of Defense, VA [E]
Kenneth Lee Friend, Jasper Thompson Lightning Protection, Inc., FL [IM]
David A. Gerstetter, UL LLC, IL [RT]
Chuck Graves, US Federal Aviation Administration, OK [E]
Mitchell Guthrie, Engineering Consultant, NC [SE]
Mark S. Harger, Harger Lightning & Grounding, IL [M]
Timothy R. Harger, Lightning Protection Institute, IL [IM]
Rep. Lightning Protection Institute
William E. Heary, Heary Brothers Lightning Protection, NY [IM]
Joshua Hoffman, Institute of Makers of Explosives (IME), DC [U]
Bryan P. Holland, National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA), FL [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association

Stephen Humeniuk, Warren Lightning Rod Company, NJ [IM]
Rep. United Lightning Protection Association, Inc.
Carl S. Johnson, II, AVCON, Inc., FL [U]
Bruce A. Kaiser, Lightning Master Corporation, FL [M]
Simon C. Larter, Dobbyn Lightning Protection, Canada [IM]
David E. McAfee, Lightning & Fire Protection Consultant, MI [SE]
Robley B. Melton, Jr., CSI Telecommunications, GA [U]
Rep. Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions
Mark P. Morgan, East Coast Lightning Equipment, Inc., CT [M]
Luke Pettross, Lightning Eliminators & Consultants Inc., CO [M]
Robert W. Rapp, National Lightning Protection Corporation, CO [M]
Lon D. Santis, Explosives Risk Managers, LLC, MD [SE]
Ewen Thomson, Marine Lightning Protection Inc., FL [SE]
John M. Tobias, US Department of the Army, MD [U]

Alternates

Luis M. Bas, Intertek Testing Services, FL [RT]
(Alt. to Christine T. Porter)
Eric S. Boettcher, UL LLC, FL [RT]
(Alt. to David A. Gerstetter)
Ernest J. Gallo, Telcordia Technologies (Ericsson), NJ [U]
(Alt. to Robley B. Melton, Jr.)
Kenneth P. Heary, Heary Brothers Lightning Protection, NY [IM]
(Alt. to William E. Heary)
Morris Kline, Lightning Master Corporation, FL [M]
(Alt. to Bruce A. Kaiser)
Joseph A. Lanzoni, Lightning Eliminators & Consultants Inc., CO [M]
(Alt. to Luke Pettross)
Andrew S. McElroy, Harger Lightning & Grounding, IL [M]
(Alt. to Mark S. Harger)

Christopher Coache, NFPA Staff Liaison

Jennifer Morgan, East Coast Lightning Equipment, CT [M]
(Alt. to Mark P. Morgan)
George Portfleet, Michigan Lightning Protection, MI [IM]
(Alt. to Stephen Humeniuk)
Andrew Ritosa, nVent/Pentair/ERICO, Inc., OH [M]
(Alt. to Matthew Caie)
Allan P. Steffes, Thompson Lightning Protection Inc., MN [M]
(Voting Alt.)
Paul R. Svendsen, National Lightning Protection Corporation, CO [M]
(Alt. to Robert W. Rapp)
Leah Tietjen, Los Alamos National Laboratory, NM [U]
(Voting Alt.)

This list represents the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the final text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. A key to classifications is found at the back of the document.

NOTE: Membership on a committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or any document developed by the committee on which the member serves.

Committee Scope: This Committee shall have primary responsibility for documents on the protection from lightning of buildings and structures, recreation and sports areas, and any other situations involving danger from lightning to people or property, except those concepts utilizing early streamer emission air terminals. The protection of electric generating, transmission, and distribution systems is not within the scope of this Committee.

Contents

Chapter 1 Administration	780- 7	6.11 Metal Guy Wires and Cables.	780- 32
1.1 Scope.	780- 7	Chapter 7 Protection for Structures Containing Flammable Vapors, Flammable Gases, or Liquids That Can Give Off Flammable Vapors	780- 32
1.2 Purpose.	780- 7	7.1 Applicability.	780- 32
1.3 Listed, Labeled, or Approved Components.	780- 7	7.2 Principles of Protection.	780- 32
1.4 Retroactivity.	780- 7	7.3 Protective Measures.	780- 33
1.5 Mechanical Execution of Work.	780- 7	7.4 Operating Facilities (Non-Storage Applications).	780- 33
1.6 Maintenance.	780- 7	7.5 Storage Tanks Under Pressure.	780- 33
1.7 Periodic Inspection.	780- 7	7.6 Aboveground Tanks at Atmospheric Pressure. ..	780- 33
1.8 Units of Measurement.	780- 7	7.7 Earthen Containers at Atmospheric Pressure Containing Flammable Vapors or Liquids That Give Off Flammable Vapors.	780- 34
Chapter 2 Referenced Publications	780- 8	7.8 Tank Batteries.	780- 34
2.1 General.	780- 8	Chapter 8 Protection of Structures Housing Explosive Materials	780- 35
2.2 NFPA Publications.	780- 8	8.1 Application.	780- 35
2.3 Other Publications.	780- 8	8.2 General.	780- 35
2.4 References for Extracts in Mandatory Sections.	780- 8	8.3 Types of Lightning Protection.	780- 35
Chapter 3 Definitions	780- 8	8.4 Grounding.	780- 35
3.1 General.	780- 8	8.5 Bonding.	780- 36
3.2 NFPA Official Definitions.	780- 8	8.6 Surge Protection.	780- 36
3.3 General Definitions.	780- 8	8.7 Protection for Specific Facilities.	780- 37
Chapter 4 General Requirements	780- 10	8.8 Metallic Fences.	780- 38
4.1 General.	780- 10	8.9 Maintenance and Inspection Plan.	780- 38
4.2 Materials.	780- 11	8.10 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance.	780- 38
4.3 Corrosion Protection.	780- 12	Chapter 9 Protection for Wind Turbines	780- 39
4.4 Mechanical Damage or Displacement.	780- 12	9.1 General.	780- 39
4.5 Strike Termination Devices.	780- 12	9.2 Fundamental Principles of Protection.	780- 39
4.6 Strike Termination Devices on Roofs.	780- 13	9.3 Protection of Electrical and Mechanical Control Systems.	780- 39
4.7 Zones of Protection.	780- 18	9.4 Grounding.	780- 39
4.8 Conductors.	780- 20	Chapter 10 Protection for Watercraft	780- 39
4.9 Conductor Fasteners.	780- 22	10.1 General.	780- 39
4.10 Masonry Anchors.	780- 22	10.2 Materials.	780- 39
4.11 Connectors.	780- 22	10.3 Strike Termination.	780- 40
4.12 Grounding Electrodes.	780- 22	10.4 Conductors.	780- 40
4.13 Common Bonding of Grounded Systems.	780- 24	10.5 Grounding.	780- 42
4.14 Potential Equalization.	780- 25	Chapter 11 Protection for Airfield Lighting Circuits ...	780- 43
4.15 Bonding of Metal Bodies.	780- 25	11.1 General.	780- 43
4.16 Metal Antenna Masts and Supports.	780- 26	11.2 Application.	780- 43
4.17 Concealed Systems.	780- 26	11.3 Purpose.	780- 43
4.18 Structural Metallic Systems.	780- 27	11.4 Airfield Lighting Counterpoise System.	780- 43
4.19 Surge Protection.	780- 27	Chapter 12 Protection for Solar Arrays	780- 46
Chapter 5 Protection for Miscellaneous Structures and Special Occupancies	780- 29	12.1 General.	780- 46
5.1 General.	780- 29	12.2 Fundamental Principles of Protection.	780- 46
5.2 Masts, Spires, Flagpoles.	780- 29	12.3 Strike Termination Devices.	780- 46
5.3 Facilities That Handle or Process Combustible or Explosive Dust.	780- 29	12.4 Protection of Electrical and Mechanical Systems.	780- 47
5.4 Metal Towers and Tanks.	780- 29	12.5 Grounding.	780- 48
5.5 Air-Inflated Structures.	780- 29	Annex A Explanatory Material	780- 48
5.6 Concrete Tanks and Silos.	780- 29	Annex B Principles of Lightning Protection	780- 70
5.7 Guyed Structures.	780- 30	Annex C Explanation of Bonding Principles	780- 73
5.8 Rooftop Helipads.	780- 30	Annex D Inspection and Maintenance of Lightning Protection Systems	780- 75
5.9 Fabric Structures.	780- 30		
Chapter 6 Protection for Heavy-Duty Stacks	780- 30		
6.1 General.	780- 30		
6.2 Materials.	780- 30		
6.3 Strike Termination Devices.	780- 30		
6.4 Conductors.	780- 31		
6.5 Fasteners.	780- 31		
6.6 Splices.	780- 31		
6.7 Reinforced Concrete Stacks.	780- 32		
6.8 Bonding of Metal Bodies.	780- 32		
6.9 Grounding.	780- 32		
6.10 Metal Stacks.	780- 32		

Annex E	Ground Measurement Techniques	780– 76	Annex L	Lightning Risk Assessment	780– 86
Annex F	Protection for Trees	780– 77	Annex M	Guide for Personal Safety from Lightning	780– 101
Annex G	Protection for Picnic Grounds, Playgrounds, Ball Parks, and Other Open Places	780– 78	Annex N	Considerations for Nonmetallic Tanks Containing Flammable Vapors or Liquids that Give Off Flammable Vapors	780– 102
Annex H	Protection for Livestock in Fields	780– 79	Annex O	Informational References	780– 103
Annex I	Protection for Parked Aircraft	780– 79	Index	780– 106
Annex J	Protection of Smart Structures	780– 80			
Annex K	Guide to International Standards Dealing with the Selection of SPDs for Use on Photovoltaic (PV) Installations	780– 85			

NFPA 780

Standard for the

Installation of Lightning Protection Systems

2023 Edition

IMPORTANT NOTE: This NFPA document is made available for use subject to important notices and legal disclaimers. These notices and disclaimers appear in all publications containing this document and may be found under the heading “Important Notices and Disclaimers Concerning NFPA Standards.” They can also be viewed at www.nfpa.org/disclaimers or obtained on request from NFPA.

UPDATES, ALERTS, AND FUTURE EDITIONS: New editions of NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides (i.e., NFPA Standards) are released on scheduled revision cycles. This edition may be superseded by a later one, or it may be amended outside of its scheduled revision cycle through the issuance of Tentative Interim Amendments (TIAs). An official NFPA Standard at any point in time consists of the current edition of the document, together with all TIAs and Errata in effect. To verify that this document is the current edition or to determine if it has been amended by TIAs or Errata, please consult the National Fire Codes® Subscription Service or the “List of NFPA Codes & Standards” at www.nfpa.org/docinfo. In addition to TIAs and Errata, the document information pages also include the option to sign up for alerts for individual documents and to be involved in the development of the next edition.

NOTICE: An asterisk (*) following the number or letter designating a paragraph indicates that explanatory material on the paragraph can be found in Annex A.

A reference in brackets [] following a section or paragraph indicates material that has been extracted from another NFPA document. Extracted text may be edited for consistency and style and may include the revision of internal paragraph references and other references as appropriate. Requests for interpretations or revisions of extracted text shall be sent to the technical committee responsible for the source document.

Information on referenced and extracted publications can be found in Chapter 2 and Annex O.

Chapter 1 Administration

1.1 Scope.

1.1.1 This document shall cover traditional lightning protection system installation requirements for the following:

- (1) Ordinary structures
- (2) Miscellaneous structures and special occupancies
- (3) Heavy-duty stacks
- (4) Structures containing flammable vapors, flammable gases, or liquids that can give off flammable vapors
- (5) Structures housing explosive materials
- (6) Wind turbines
- (7) Watercraft
- (8) Airfield lighting circuits
- (9) Solar arrays

1.1.2* This document shall address lightning protection of the structure but not the equipment or installation requirements for electric generating, transmission, and distribution systems except as given in Chapter 9 and Chapter 12.

1.1.3 This document shall not cover lightning protection system installation requirements for early streamer emission systems or charge dissipation systems.

1.2* Purpose. The purpose of this standard shall be to provide for the safeguarding of persons and property from hazards arising from exposure to lightning.

1.3 Listed, Labeled, or Approved Components.

1.3.1 Where fittings, connectors, devices, lightning conductors, air terminals, or other components required by this standard are available as listed or labeled, such components shall be used.

1.3.2 Listed or labeled equipment shall be installed and used in accordance with any limitations and instructions included in the listing or labeling.

1.4 Retroactivity. The provisions of this standard reflect a consensus of what is necessary to provide an acceptable degree of protection from the hazards addressed in this standard at the time the standard was issued.

1.4.1 Unless otherwise specified, the provisions of this standard shall not apply to facilities, equipment, structures, or installations that existed or were approved for construction or installation prior to the effective date of the standard. Where specified in this standard, the provisions of this standard shall be retroactive.

1.4.2 In those cases where the authority having jurisdiction determines that the existing situation presents an unacceptable degree of risk, the authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to apply retroactively any portions of this standard deemed appropriate.

1.4.3 The retroactive requirements of this standard shall be permitted to be modified if their application clearly would be impractical in the judgment of the authority having jurisdiction, and only where it is clearly evident that a reasonable degree of safety is provided.

1.5 Mechanical Execution of Work.

1.5.1 Lightning protection systems shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner.

1.5.2* The individual(s) responsible for the installation shall be certified for fitness on the requirements of this standard by the authority having jurisdiction.

1.5.3 Where required by the authority having jurisdiction, compliance of the completed installation with the requirements of this standard shall be certified through a physical on-site inspection by a qualified and impartial organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

1.6* Maintenance. Recommended guidelines for the maintenance of the lightning protection system shall be provided to the owner at the completion of installation.

1.7 Periodic Inspection. Periodic inspections or testing for compliance to this standard shall be done at intervals determined by the authority having jurisdiction.

1.8 Units of Measurement.

1.8.1 The values stated shall be a minimum requirement, and standard deviations are not permitted.

1.8.2 Measurements shall be presented in inch-pound units followed by the equivalent value presented in SI units in parentheses.

1.8.3 A given equivalent value shall be approximate.

Chapter 2 Referenced Publications

2.1 General. The documents or portions thereof listed in this chapter are referenced within this standard and shall be considered part of the requirements of this document.

2.2 NFPA Publications. National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471.

NFPA 61, *Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Dust Explosions in Agricultural and Food Processing Facilities*, 2020 edition.

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code*®, 2023 edition.

NFPA 122, *Standard for Fire Prevention and Control in Metal/Nonmetal Mining and Metal Mineral Processing Facilities*, 2020 edition.

NFPA 664, *Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Explosions in Wood Processing and Woodworking Facilities*, 2020 edition.

2.3 Other Publications.

2.3.1 Other Publications.

Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary, 11th edition, Merriam-Webster, Inc., Springfield, MA, 2003.

2.4 References for Extracts in Mandatory Sections.

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code*®, 2023 edition.

NFPA 115, *Standard for Laser Fire Protection*, 2020 edition.

Chapter 3 Definitions

3.1 General. The definitions contained in this chapter shall apply to the terms used in this standard. Where terms are not defined in this chapter or within another chapter, they shall be defined using their ordinarily accepted meanings within the context in which they are used. *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*, 11th edition, shall be the source for the ordinarily accepted meaning.

3.2 NFPA Official Definitions.

3.2.1* Approved. Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

3.2.2* Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ). An organization, office, or individual responsible for enforcing the requirements of a code or standard, or for approving equipment, materials, an installation, or a procedure.

3.2.3 Labeled. Equipment or materials to which has been attached a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with product evaluation, that maintains periodic inspection of production of labeled equipment or materials, and by whose labeling the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.

3.2.4* Listed. Equipment, materials, or services included in a list published by an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with evaluation of

products or services, that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services, and whose listing states that either the equipment, material, or service meets appropriate designated standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

3.2.5 Shall. Indicates a mandatory requirement.

3.2.6 Should. Indicates a recommendation or that which is advised but not required.

3.2.7 Standard. An NFPA Standard, the main text of which contains only mandatory provisions using the word “shall” to indicate requirements and that is in a form generally suitable for mandatory reference by another standard or code or for adoption into law. Nonmandatory provisions are not to be considered a part of the requirements of a standard and shall be located in an appendix, annex, footnote, informational note, or other means as permitted in the NFPA Manuals of Style. When used in a generic sense, such as in the phrase “standards development process” or “standards development activities,” the term “standards” includes all NFPA Standards, including Codes, Standards, Recommended Practices, and Guides.

3.3 General Definitions.

3.3.1* Air Terminal. A **manufactured** strike termination device intended to provide an intentional attachment point for flashes to the lightning protection system.

3.3.2* Bonded, Inherently. Bonding between metal bodies, building framework, and lightning protection system components that are joined through construction.

3.3.3 Bonding. An electrical connection between an electrically conductive object and a component of a lightning protection system that is intended to significantly reduce potential differences created by lightning currents.

3.3.4* Cable. A conductor formed of a number of wires stranded together.

3.3.5 Catenary Lightning Protection System. A lightning protection system consisting of one or more overhead ground wires.

3.3.6 Chimney. A construction containing one or more flues that does not meet the criteria defined for heavy-duty stack.

3.3.7* Combination Waveform Generator. A surge generator with a 2-ohm internal impedance producing a 1.2/50 μ s open circuit voltage and an 8/20 μ s short-circuit current waveshape.

3.3.8 Conductor.

3.3.8.1 Bonding Conductor. A conductor used for potential equalization between grounded metal bodies or electrically conductive objects and a lightning protection system.

3.3.8.2 Counterpoise Conductor. A bare underground electrical conductor providing an area of protection from the effects of lightning for underground raceway(s) or cable(s).

3.3.8.3 Down Conductor. A main conductor used to connect roof conductors to grounding electrodes.

3.3.8.4* Ground Loop Conductor. A main-size loop conductor installed within 12 ft (3.6 m) vertically of the base of the structure to provide a common ground potential.

3.3.8.5 Loop Conductor. A main-sized conductor encircling a structure that is used to interconnect grounding electrodes, main conductors, or other electrically conductive bodies.

3.3.8.6* Main Conductor. A conductor intended to be used to carry lightning currents between strike termination devices and grounding electrodes.

3.3.8.7 Roof Conductor. A main conductor used to interconnect strike termination devices.

3.3.9 Copper-Clad Steel. Steel with a coating of copper bonded to it.

N 3.3.10 Connector. A device to splice, tap, or terminate a conductor.

N 3.3.10.1* Bolted Connector. A device that employs mechanical fasteners to maintain conductivity.

N 3.3.10.2* Crimp Connector. A device that employs metal tabs (i.e., fingers) that enclose the conductor to maintain conductivity.

N 3.3.10.3* Exothermic Weld. A welding process that employs molten metal to form a permanent connection.

N 3.3.10.4* High-Compression Connector. A device that utilizes a high-tonnage compression tool to permanently deform the connector material to maintain conductivity.

3.3.11 Discharge Current.

3.3.11.1 Maximum Discharge Current (I_{max}). The maximum instantaneous value of a current through a surge-protective device (SPD) having an 8/20 μ s waveform.

3.3.11.2 Nominal Discharge Current (I_n). Peak value of 8/20 μ s current waveform selected by the manufacturer for which a surge-protective device (SPD) remains functional after 15 surges.

3.3.12 Explosives Materials. Materials, including explosives, blasting agents, and detonators, that are authorized for transportation by the Department of Transportation or the Department of Defense as explosive materials.

3.3.13 Fastener. An attachment device used to secure the conductor to the structure.

3.3.14 Flame Protection. Self-closing gauge hatches, vapor seals, pressure-vacuum breather valves, flame arresters, or other effective means to minimize the possibility of flame entering the vapor space of a tank.

3.3.15* Flammable Air-Vapor Mixtures. Flammable vapors mixed with air in proportions that will cause the mixture to burn rapidly when ignited.

3.3.16 Flammable Vapors. A concentration of constituents in air that exceeds 25 percent of its lower flammable limit (LFL). [115, 2020]

3.3.17 Flash Point. The minimum temperature at which a liquid or a solid emits vapor sufficient to form an ignitable mixture with air near the surface of the liquid or the solid.

• 3.3.18 Grounded (Grounding). Connected (connecting) to ground or to a conductive body that extends the ground connection. [70:100]

Δ 3.3.19 Grounding Electrode. A component of a lightning protection system installed for the purpose of transferring the current on the lightning conductors into the earth.

3.3.20 Hazard Division 1.4. Ammunition and explosives that produce a moderate fire with no significant blast or fragment hazards.

3.3.21 Headwall. A retaining wall at the outlet of an earth-covered magazine.

3.3.22 Heavy-Duty Stack. A smoke or vent stack with a flue that has a cross-sectional area of the flue greater than 500 in.² (0.3 m²) and a height greater than 75 ft (23 m).

3.3.23 Integral Lightning Protection System. A lightning protection system directly attached to the structure.

• 3.3.24* Light Base. An enclosure used as a mounting base for airfield light fixtures, an isolation transformer housing, an electrical junction box, or any combination thereof.

3.3.25 Lightning Electromagnetic Impulse (LEMP). Electromagnetic effects of lightning current, which includes conducted surges as well as radiated impulse electromagnetic field effects.

3.3.26* Lightning Protection System. A complete system of strike termination devices, conductors (which could include conductive structural members), grounding electrodes, interconnecting conductors, surge protection, and other connectors and fittings required to complete the system.

3.3.27 Liquid.

3.3.27.1 Class I Flammable Liquid. Any liquid that has a closed-cup flash point below 100°F (37.8°C) and a Reid vapor pressure not exceeding an absolute pressure of 40 psi (276 kPa) at 100°F (37.8°C).

3.3.27.2 Combustible Liquid. Any liquid that has a closed-cup flash point at or above 100°F (37.8°C).

3.3.28 Magazine. A structure specifically designed to store ammunition and explosives.

3.3.28.1 Earth-Covered Magazine (ECM). An aboveground, earth-covered structure with a minimum of 24 in. (600 mm) soil cover depth and a slope of 2 horizontal and 1 vertical.

3.3.28.2 Portable Magazine. A magazine that can be moved from one location to another.

3.3.29 Magnetically Shielded. All or part of an object enclosed in a metallic grid or continuous screen that reduces the effects of the lightning electromagnetic pulse (LEMP) and consequences relating to the failure or upset of electronic systems and their components.

3.3.30 Mast-Type Lightning Protection System. A lightning protection system using one or more masts that are remote from the structure to provide a zone of protection as described in this standard.

3.3.31 Materials.

3.3.31.1* Class I Materials. Lightning conductors, air terminals, grounding electrodes, connectors, and associated fittings required for the protection of structures not exceeding 75 ft (23 m) in height.

3.3.31.2* Class II Materials. Lightning conductors, air terminals, grounding electrodes, connectors, and associated fittings required for the protection of structures exceeding 75 ft (23 m) in height.

3.3.32* Mounting Stake. A steel angle iron driven vertically into the earth with provisions for the mounting of an elevated airfield lighting fixture.

3.3.33 Pavement. A hard, layered surface constructed to provide support for the loads imposed by airplanes and to produce a firm, stable, smooth, all-year, all-weather surface free of debris or other particles blown or picked up by propeller wash or jet blast.

3.3.33.1 Full Strength Pavement. Pavement designed to provide support for an aircraft for continual operations of the aircraft.

3.3.33.2 Shoulder Pavement. Pavement designed to provide support for an aircraft for unintentional or emergency operations of the aircraft.

3.3.34* Raceway. An enclosed channel designed expressly for holding wires, cables, or busbars, with additional functions as permitted in this standard. [70:100]

3.3.35 Sideflash. An electrical spark, caused by differences of potential, that occurs between conductive metal bodies or between conductive metal bodies and a component of a lightning protection system or ground.

3.3.36 Smart Structure. A structure that has a high degree of interconnected automatic systems for lighting, temperature control, multimedia systems, telecommunications, security, window and door operations, and other functions.

3.3.37 Solar Array. A group of photovoltaic (PV) modules or solar thermal collectors wired or connected together in a string or larger collection system.

3.3.38* Solar Panel. A general term for thermal collectors or photovoltaic (PV) modules.

3.3.39 Spark Gap. Any short air space between two conductors that are electrically insulated from or remotely electrically connected to each other.

3.3.40 Strike Termination Device. A conductive component of the lightning protection system capable of receiving a lightning strike and providing a connection to a path to ground. Strike termination devices include air terminals, metal masts, permanent metal parts of structures as described in 4.5.1.4, and overhead ground wires installed in catenary lightning protection systems.

3.3.41 Striking Distance. The distance over which the final breakdown of the initial lightning stroke to ground or to a grounded object occurs.

• **Δ 3.3.42* Surge.** A transient wave of current, potential, or power in an electric circuit.

N 3.3.43* Surge Arrester. A protective device for limiting surge voltages by discharging or bypassing the surge current.

N 3.3.44* Surge Protector. A protective device for limiting excessive potential and current on signal, data, and communication circuits caused by lightning, contact with power conductors, power induction, and rises in ground potential, while also

preventing the continued flow of the follow current while remaining capable of repeating these functions.

Δ 3.3.45* Surge-Protective Device (SPD). A protective device for limiting the transient voltages by diverting or limiting the surge current and preventing the continued flow of the follow current while remaining capable of repeating these functions.

N 3.3.46* Tank Battery. A group of tanks and the associated process equipment for crude oil production or saltwater disposal.

Δ 3.3.47 Transient. A subcycle disturbance in the ac waveform that is evidenced by a sharp, brief discontinuity of the waveform.

3.3.48 Turf. Grass, stabilized soil, asphalt, or any other hard surface not intended as a paved shoulder, installed from the edge of the runway or taxiway full strength pavement to just outside the airfield lighting circuits.

• **3.3.49 Voltage.**

3.3.49.1 Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV). The maximum designated root mean square (rms) value of the power frequency voltage that can be continuously applied to the mode of protection of a surge protective device (SPD).

3.3.49.2 Maximum Permitted DC Voltage (V_{pdc}). The maximum permitted dc voltage rating across a photovoltaic surge-protective device (PV SPD).

3.3.49.3 Measured Limiting Voltage (MLV). Maximum magnitude of voltage that is measured across the terminals of the surge-protective device (SPD) during the application of impulses of specified waveshape and amplitude.

• **3.3.49.4 Rated Impulse Withstand Voltage Level (Withstand Voltage) (U_w).** Impulse withstand voltage assigned by the manufacturer to wiring and equipment, or to a part of it, characterizing the specified withstand capability of its insulation against (transient) overvoltages.

3.3.50* Voltage Protection Rating (VPR). A rating (or ratings) selected by the manufacturer based on the measured limiting voltage determined when the surge-protective device (SPD) is subjected to a combination waveform with an open circuit voltage of 6 kV and a short-circuit current of 3 kA.

3.3.51 Watercraft. All forms of boats and vessels up to 300 gross tons (272 metric tons) used for pleasure or commercial purposes, but excluding seaplanes, hovercraft, vessels with a cargo of flammable liquids, and submersible vessels.

3.3.52 Zone of Protection. The space adjacent to a lightning protection system that is substantially immune to direct lightning flashes.

Chapter 4 General Requirements

4.1 General. This chapter provides general requirements for the protection of structures against lightning.

4.1.1 Material Class Requirements.

4.1.1.1* Structures shall be protected according to 4.1.1.1.1 or 4.1.1.1.2.

4.1.1.1.1 Structures not exceeding 75 ft (23 m) in height shall be protected with Class I materials as shown in Table 4.1.1.1.1.

4.1.1.1.2 Structures exceeding 75 ft (23 m) in height shall be protected with Class II materials as shown in Table 4.1.1.1.2.

4.1.1.2 If part of a structure exceeds 75 ft (23 m) in height (e.g., a steeple) and the remaining portion does not exceed 75 ft (23 m) in height, the requirements for Class II air terminals and conductors shall apply only to that portion exceeding 75 ft (23 m) in height.

4.1.1.3 Class II conductors from the higher portion shall be extended to ground and shall be interconnected with the balance of the system.

N 4.1.1.4 Additions to Existing Structures. An existing structure requiring Class I materials on which a new addition requires Class II materials shall be permitted to use the existing ground ring conductor installed and determined to be suitable for continued service.

Δ 4.2 Materials. Protection systems shall be made up of materials that are resistant to or protected against corrosion.

Δ 4.2.1 Combinations of materials that form electrolytic couples that, in the presence of moisture, accelerate corrosion shall not be used (*see also Section 4.3*).

4.2.2 One or more of the materials in 4.2.2.1 through 4.2.2.3 shall be used.

4.2.2.1 Copper. Copper shall be of the grade required for commercial electrical work and shall be of 95 percent conductivity when annealed.

4.2.2.2 Copper Alloys. Copper alloy shall be as resistant to corrosion as copper is.

4.2.2.3 Aluminum.

Δ 4.2.2.3.1* Aluminum shall not be used within 18 in. (450 mm) of the point where the lightning protection system comes into contact with the earth or where rapid deterioration is possible.

4.2.2.3.2 Conductors shall be of electrical-grade aluminum with a minimum chemical composition of 99 percent aluminum.

4.2.3 Copper lightning protection materials shall not be installed on or in contact with aluminum roofing, aluminum siding, or other aluminum surfaces.

4.2.4* Aluminum lightning protection materials shall not be installed on or in contact with copper roofing materials or other copper surfaces, or where exposed to runoff from copper surfaces.

N 4.2.5* Lightning protection systems shall be designed to minimize the effects caused by runoff from both copper and aluminum lightning protection materials to prevent the deterioration of incompatible materials and minimize the degradation of building aesthetics caused by staining.

Δ Table 4.1.1.1.1 Minimum Class I Material Requirements

Type of Conductor	Parameter	Copper		Aluminum	
		US	SI	US	SI
Air terminal, solid	Diameter	⅝ in.	9.5 mm	⅝ in.	12.7 mm
Air terminal, tubular	Diameter	⅝ in.	15.9 mm	⅝ in.	15.9 mm
	Wall thickness	0.033 in.	0.8 mm	0.064 in.	1.63 mm
Main conductor, cable	Size each strand	17 AWG	1.04 mm ²	14 AWG	2.08 mm ²
	Weight per length	187 lb/1000 ft	278 g/m	95 lb/1000 ft	141 g/m
	Cross-section area	57,400 cir. mils	29 mm ²	98,600 cir. mils	50 mm ²
Bonding conductor, cable	Size each strand	17 AWG	1.04 mm ²	14 AWG	2.08 mm ²
(solid or stranded)	Cross-section area	26,240 cir. mils	13.3 mm ²	41,100 cir. mils	20.8 mm ²
Bonding conductor, solid strip	Thickness	0.051 in.	1.30 mm	0.064 in.	1.63 mm
	Width	½ in.	12.7 mm	½ in.	12.7 mm
Main conductor, solid strip	Thickness	0.051 in.	1.30 mm	0.064 in.	1.63 mm
	Cross-section area	57,400 cir. mils	29 mm ²	98,600 cir. mils	50 mm ²

Δ Table 4.1.1.1.2 Minimum Class II Material Requirements

Type of Conductor	Parameter	Copper		Aluminum	
		US	SI	US	SI
Air terminal, solid	Diameter	½ in.	12.7 mm	⅝ in.	15.9 mm
Main conductor, cable	Size each strand	15 AWG	1.65 mm ²	13 AWG	2.62 mm ²
	Weight per length	375 lb/1000 ft	558 g/m	190 lb/1000 ft	283 g/m
	Cross-section area	115,000 cir. mils	58 mm ²	192,000 cir. mils	97 mm ²
Bonding conductor, cable	Size each strand	17 AWG	1.04 mm ²	14 AWG	2.08 mm ²
(solid or stranded)	Cross-section area	26,240 cir. mils	13.2 mm ²	41,100 cir. mils	20.8 mm ²
Bonding conductor, solid strip	Thickness	0.051 in.	1.30 mm	0.064 in.	1.63 mm
	Width	½ in.	12.7 mm	½ in.	12.7 mm
Main conductor, solid strip	Thickness	0.064 in.	1.63 mm	0.1026 in.	2.61 mm
	Cross-section area	115,000 cir. mils	58 mm ²	192,000 cir. mils	97 mm ²

4.3 Corrosion Protection.

4.3.1 Protection shall be provided against the deterioration of lightning protection components caused by local atmospheric conditions.

4.3.2 Copper components installed within 24 in. (600 mm) of the top of a chimney or vent emitting corrosive gases shall be protected by a hot-dipped lead or tin coating.

4.3.3 An aluminum conductor shall not be attached to a surface coated with alkaline-based paint, embedded in concrete or masonry, or installed in a location subject to excessive moisture.

4.3.4 Connectors and Fittings.

▲ **4.3.4.1** Connectors and fittings shall be compatible for use with the conductor and surfaces on which they are installed.

4.3.4.2 Bimetallic connectors and fittings shall be used for splicing or bonding dissimilar metals.

4.3.4.3 Fittings used for the connection of aluminum down conductors to copper or copper-clad grounding equipment shall be of the bimetallic type.

4.4 Mechanical Damage or Displacement.

4.4.1* Any part of a lightning protection system that is subject to mechanical damage or displacement shall be protected with a protective molding or covering.

4.4.2 Where metal pipe or tubing is used around a conductor, the conductor shall be bonded to the pipe or tubing at both ends.

4.5 Strike Termination Devices.

4.5.1 General.

4.5.1.1 Strike termination devices shall include air terminals, metal masts, permanent metal parts of structures as described in 4.5.1.4, and overhead ground wires.

4.5.1.2 Combinations of these strike termination devices shall be permitted.

4.5.1.3 Strike termination devices shall be provided where required by other sections of this standard.

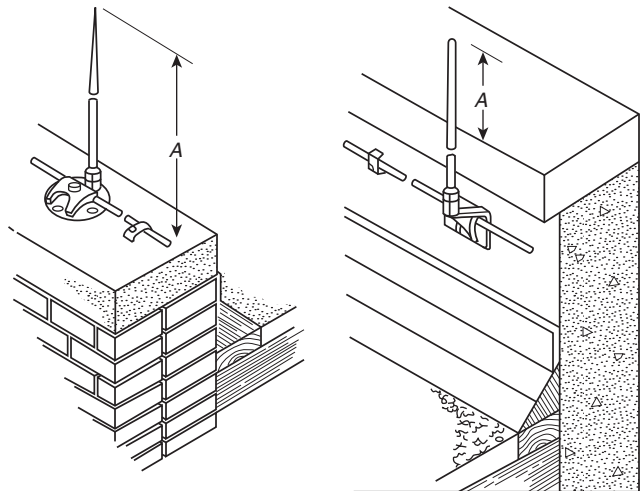
4.5.1.4 Metal parts of a structure that are exposed to direct lightning flashes and that have a metal thickness of $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) or greater shall only require connection to the lightning protection system in accordance with Section 4.8.

4.5.1.5* Metal rails outside a zone of protection having a wall thickness of $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3.2 mm) thick or greater shall only require connection to the lightning protection system in accordance with Section 4.8.

4.5.1.6 Strike termination devices shall be permitted but not required for those parts of a structure located within a zone of protection.

4.5.2 Air Terminals.

4.5.2.1* The tip of an air terminal shall be not less than 10 in. (254 mm) above the object or area it is to protect, as shown in Figure 4.5.2.1.



A: 10 in. (254 mm)

Note: Air terminal tip configurations can be sharp or blunt.

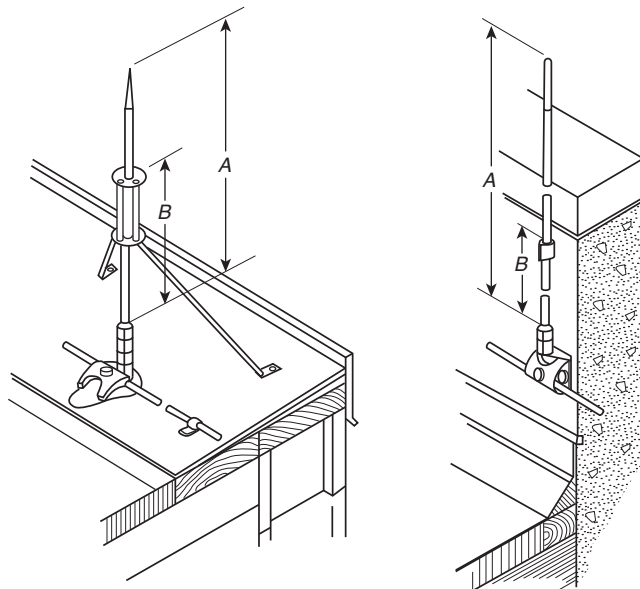
FIGURE 4.5.2.1 Air Terminal Height.

4.5.2.2 Air Terminal Support.

4.5.2.2.1 Air terminals shall be secured against overturning or displacement by at least one of the following methods:

- (1) Attachment to the object to be protected
- (2) Braces that are permanently and rigidly attached to the structure

4.5.2.2.2 Air terminals exceeding 24 in. (600 mm) in height shall be supported at a point not less than one-half their height, as shown in Figure 4.5.2.2.2.



A: Air terminals over 24 in. (600 mm) high are supported.

B: Air terminal supports are located at a point not less than one-half the height of the air terminal.

Note: Air terminal tip configurations can be sharp or blunt.

FIGURE 4.5.2.2.2 Air Terminal Support.

4.5.2.3 Ornaments.

4.5.2.3.1 An ornament or decoration on a freestanding, unbraced air terminal shall not present, in any plane, a wind-resistance area in excess of 20 in.² (0.01 m²).

4.5.2.3.2 The requirement of 4.5.2.3.1 shall permit the use of an ornamental ball 5 in. (127 mm) or less in diameter.

4.5.3 Lightning Protection Masts.

4.5.3.1 Lightning protection masts shall be permitted to provide a zone of protection.

4.5.3.2 Metal masts shall comply with 4.5.1.4 or be protected with a strike termination device.

4.5.3.3 Nonmetallic masts shall be provided with at least one strike termination device.

4.5.3.4 The top of the metallic mast shall have a metal thickness of $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) or greater or be provided with at least one strike termination device.

4.5.3.5 The mast shall be permitted to serve as the down conductor, provided it is electrically continuous and has a wall thickness of 0.064 in. (1.63 mm) minimum.

4.5.4 Overhead Ground Wires.

4.5.4.1 Overhead ground wires shall be permitted to provide a zone of protection.

4.5.4.2 Overhead ground wire material shall be constructed of aluminum, copper, stainless steel, galvanized steel, or protected steel such as copper-clad, aluminum-clad, or aluminum conductor steel reinforced (ACSR).

4.5.4.3 The overhead ground wire material shall be chosen to minimize corrosion from conditions at the site.

Δ 4.5.4.4 Overhead ground wires shall be self-supporting with minimum sag under all conditions.

N 4.5.4.5 Overhead Ground Wire Conductor Size.

N 4.5.4.5.1 Overhead ground wires shall have a minimum cross-sectional area equal to that of a main conductor.

N 4.5.4.5.2 When steel or stainless-steel cable is used for the overhead ground wire, it shall have a minimum diameter of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (12.7 mm).

4.5.4.6 Connections between galvanized steel overhead ground wires and copper conductors shall be made through a suitable component that does not permit direct contact between the two materials.

4.5.5* Isolated Masts and Overhead Ground Wires. To prevent sideflashes, the minimum distance between a mast or overhead ground wire and the structure to be protected shall be calculated.

4.5.5.1 The sideflash distance from a point on a mast shall be calculated from the following formula and units shall be consistent (e.g., either all feet or all meters):

[4.5.5.1]

$$D = \frac{h}{6}$$

where:

D = sideflash distance from a mast

h = height of structure (or object being calculated)

4.5.5.2* The sideflash distance from a point on an overhead ground wire shall be calculated as follows and units shall be consistent (e.g., either all feet or all meters):

[4.5.5.2]

$$D = \frac{l}{6n}$$

where:

D = sideflash distance from a mast or overhead ground wire

l = length of lightning protection conductor between the nearest grounded point and the point being calculated (In the calculation of spacing from an overhead wire supported by a metal mast, it shall be permitted to consider the grounded point to be the attachment point on the metal mast where the overhead wire is electrically connected. For calculations of sideflash from a mast and the calculations for overhead wires supported by nonmetallic masts, the grounded point shall be considered the grounding system connection.)

n = 1 where there is one overhead ground wire that exceeds 100 ft (30 m) in horizontal length

n = 1.5 where there are one or two down conductors connected to the overhead ground wire spaced greater than 25 ft (7.6 m) and less than 100 ft (30 m) apart along the length of the overhead ground wire

n = 2.25 where there are more than two down conductors connected to the overhead ground wires spaced more than 25 ft (7.6 m) apart and less than 100 ft (30 m) apart along the length of the overhead ground wire

4.6 Strike Termination Devices on Roofs.

4.6.1 Roof Types. The zone of protection for the following roof types shall include the roof and appurtenances where protected in accordance with Section 4.6:

- (1) Pitched roofs
- (2) Flat or gently sloping roofs
- (3) Dormers
- (4) Domed roofs
- (5) Roofs with ridges, wells, chimneys, or vents

4.6.1.1 Pitched roofs shall be defined as roofs having a span of 40 ft (12 m) or less and a slope $\frac{1}{8}$ or greater and roofs having a span of more than 40 ft (12 m) and a slope $\frac{1}{4}$ or greater.

4.6.1.2 A flat or gently sloping roof is defined as a roof with a slope less than a pitched roof.

4.6.1.3 For the purposes of this standard, roof slopes shall be as shown in Figure 4.6.1.3.

4.6.1.4 Protection for typical roof types shall be as illustrated in Figure 4.6.1.4.

4.6.1.5 Roof hips shall not be considered as ridges for the protection of these types of roofs.

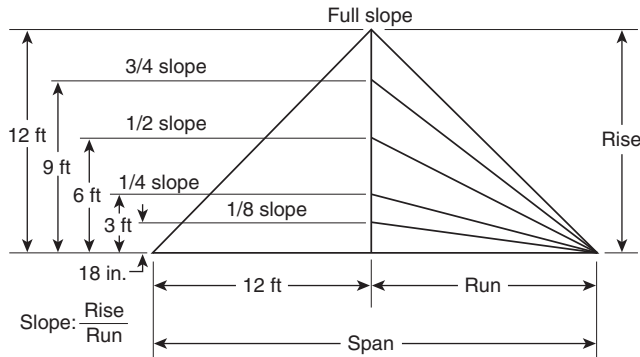


FIGURE 4.6.1.3 Roof Slope.

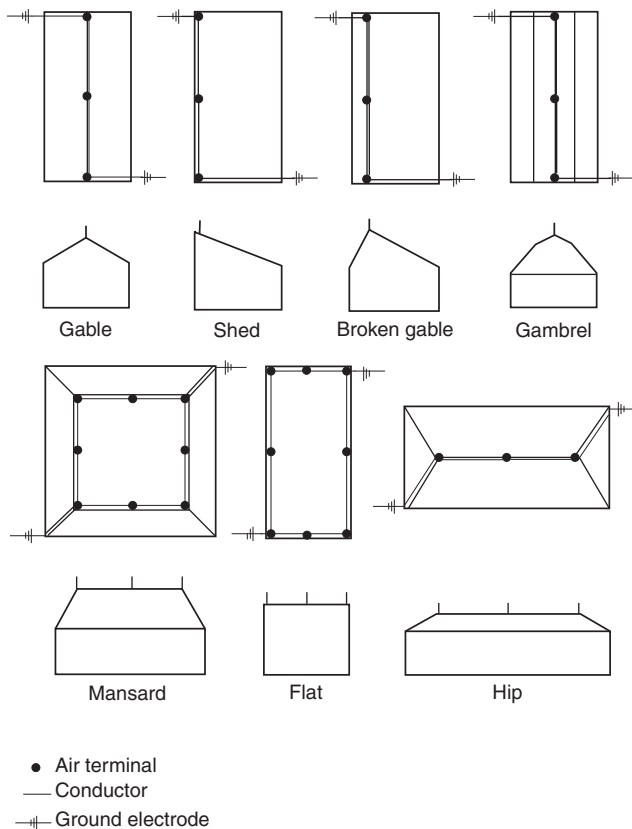


FIGURE 4.6.1.4 Protection Measures for Various Roof Types. (Drawings are top and end views of each roof type.)

4.6.2 Location of Devices.

4.6.2.1* As shown in Figure 4.6.2.1, the distance from strike termination devices to ridge ends on pitched roofs or to edges and outside corners of flat or gently sloping roofs shall not exceed 24 in. (600 mm).

4.6.2.2 Strike termination devices shall be placed on ridges of pitched roofs and around the perimeter of flat or gently sloping roofs at intervals not exceeding 20 ft (6 m).

4.6.2.3 Strike termination devices 24 in. (600 mm) or more above the object or area to be protected shall be permitted to be placed at intervals not exceeding 25 ft (7.6 m).

4.6.3 Pitched Roof Areas.

4.6.3.1 Strike termination devices shall not be required around the perimeters of pitched roofs with eave heights less than or equal to 50 ft (15 m) above grade.

4.6.3.2 For pitched roofs with a span of 100 ft (30 m) or less and eave heights greater than or equal to 50 ft (15 m) but less than 150 ft (45 m) above grade, it shall be permitted to omit strike termination devices at the eaves if the slope of that roof is equal to or steeper than the tangent of the arc at the eave elevation of a rolling sphere having a 150 ft (45 m) radius. (See Figure 4.6.3.2.)

4.6.3.2.1 Except for the gutter, any portion of the building that extends beyond that tangent shall be protected.

4.6.3.2.2 Eaves over 150 ft (45 m) above grade shall be protected in accordance with 4.6.2.

4.6.3.2.3* The tangent of the rolling sphere arc shall be considered as a vertical line over 150 ft (45 m) above grade.

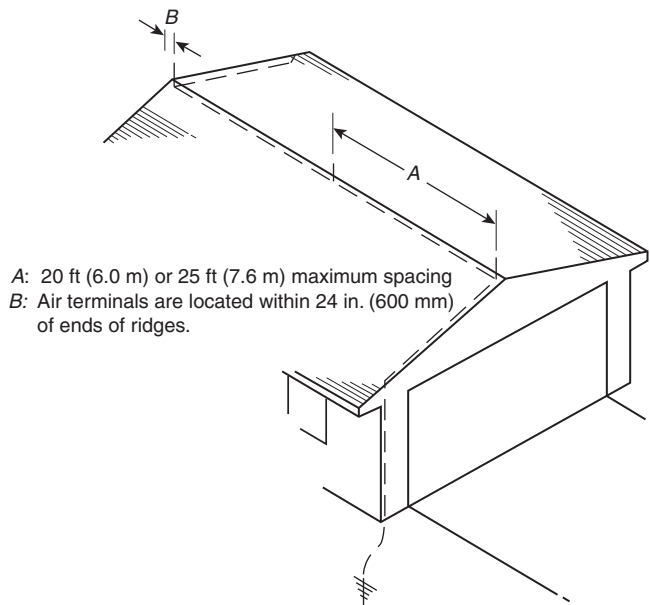


FIGURE 4.6.2.1 Air Terminals on a Pitched Roof.

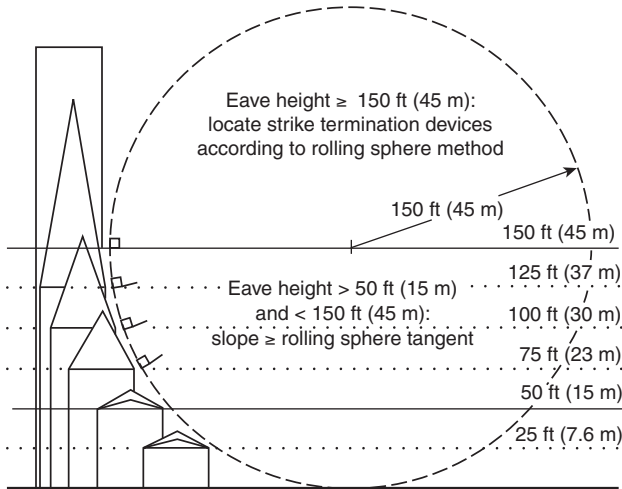


FIGURE 4.6.3.2 Illustration of Tangent of Rolling Sphere Method.

4.6.3.3 Pitched roofs not meeting the criteria of 4.6.3.1 and 4.6.3.2 shall be treated in the same manner as flat or gently sloping roofs.

4.6.4 Roofs with Intermediate Ridges. Strike termination devices shall be located along the outermost ridges of buildings that have a series of intermediate ridges at the same intervals as required by 4.6.2, as shown in Figure 4.6.4.

4.6.4.1 Strike termination devices shall be located on the intermediate ridges in accordance with the requirements for

the spacing of strike termination devices on flat or gently sloping roofs.

4.6.4.2 If any intermediate ridge is higher than the outermost ridges, it shall be treated as a main ridge and protected according to 4.6.2.

4.6.5 Flat or Gently Sloping Roof Area.

4.6.5.1 Flat or gently sloping roofs that exceed 50 ft (15 m) in width or length shall have additional strike termination devices located at intervals not to exceed 50 ft (15 m) on the flat or gently sloping areas, as shown in Figure 4.6.5.1(a) and Figure 4.6.5.1(b).

4.6.5.2 Such areas shall be permitted to be protected using taller strike termination devices that create zones of protection using the rolling sphere method.

4.6.6 Flat or Gently Sloping Roofs with Irregular Perimeters. Structures that have exterior wall designs that result in irregular roof perimeters shall be treated on an individual basis.

4.6.6.1 The imaginary roof edge formed by the outermost projections shall be used to locate the strike termination devices in accordance with 4.6.2.

4.6.6.2 In all cases, strike termination devices shall be located in accordance with Section 4.6, as shown in Figure 4.6.6.2.

N 4.6.6.3 A curved perimeter of a structure shall be protected so that the outer edge of the structure is less than 24 in. (600 mm) from a straight line or chord between two adjacent air terminals, as shown in Figure 4.6.6.3.

A = 50 ft (15 m) maximum spacing on intermediate ridges.

B = 20 ft (6 m) or 25 ft (7.6 m) spacing, subject to air-terminal height.

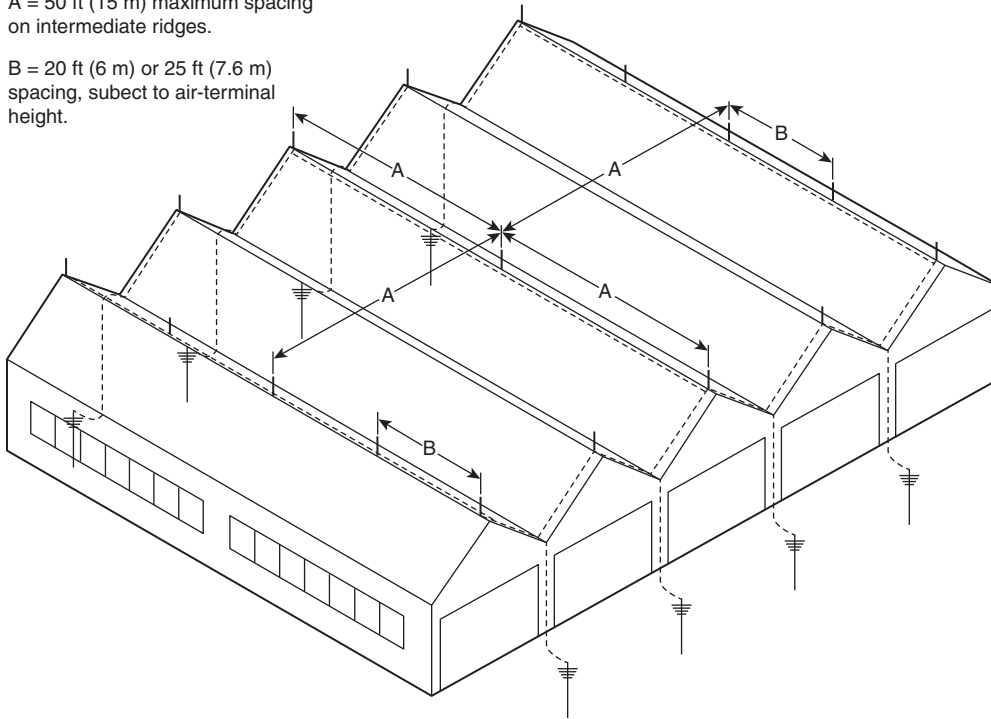
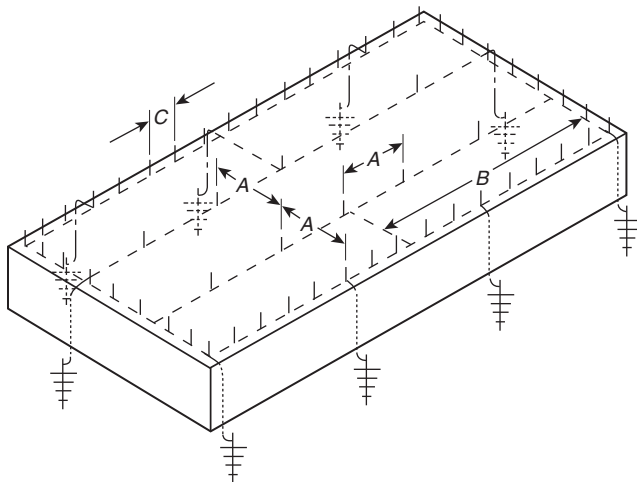
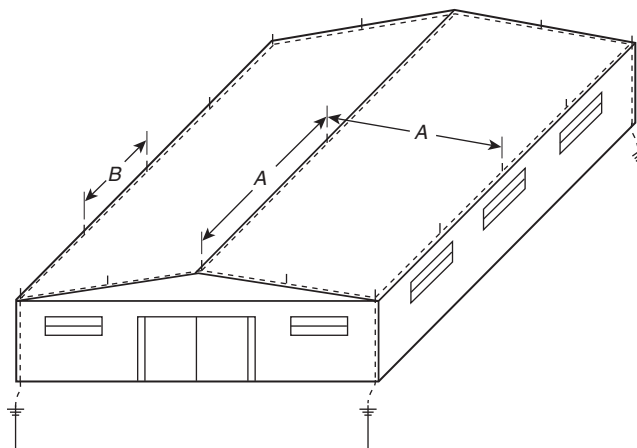


FIGURE 4.6.4 Air Terminals on Intermediate Ridges.



- A: 50 ft (15 m) maximum spacing between air terminals
 B: 150 ft (45 m) maximum length of cross-run conductor permitted without a connection from the cross-run conductor to the main perimeter or down conductor
 C: 20 ft (6 m) or 25 ft (7.6 m) maximum spacings between air terminals along edge

FIGURE 4.6.5.1(a) Air Terminals on a Flat Roof.



- A: 50 ft (15 m) maximum spacing
 B: 20 ft (6 m) or 25 ft (7.6 m) maximum spacing

FIGURE 4.6.5.1(b) Air Terminals on a Gently Sloping Roof.

4.6.7* Dormers.

4.6.7.1 Dormers as high as or higher than the main roof ridge shall be protected with strike termination devices, conductors, and grounds.

4.6.7.2 Dormers and projections below the main ridge shall require protection only on those areas extending outside a zone of protection.

4.6.8 Strike Termination Devices Installed on Vertical Roof Members. Strike termination devices installed on vertical roof members shall be permitted to use a single main-size cable to connect to a main roof conductor.

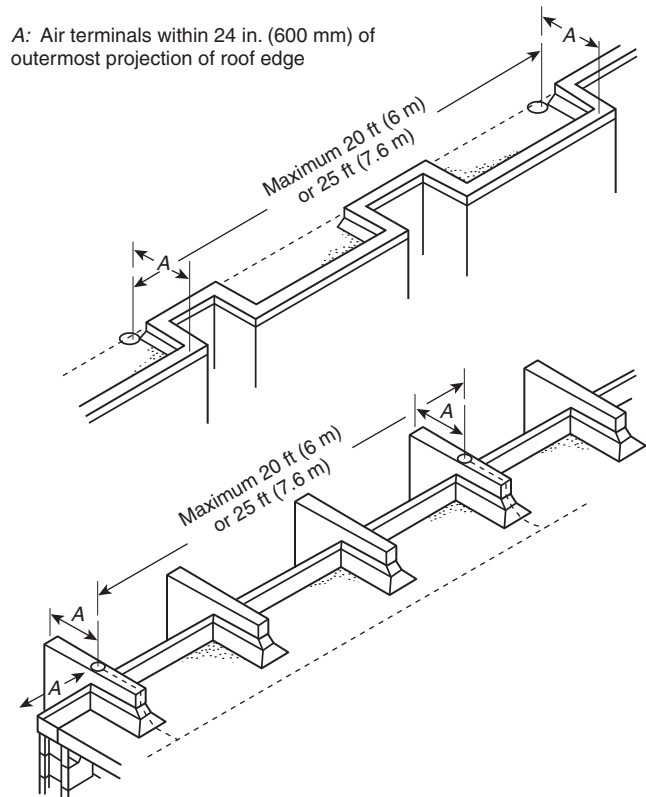


FIGURE 4.6.6.2 Flat or Gently Sloping Roof with an Irregular Perimeter.

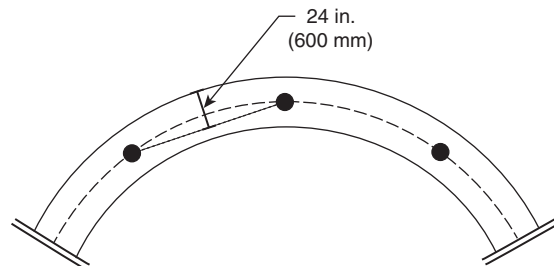


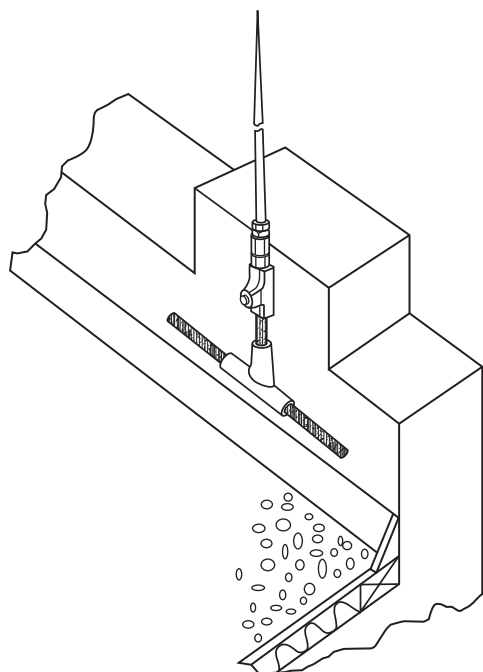
FIGURE 4.6.6.3 Flat or Gently Sloping Roof with a Curved Perimeter.

4.6.8.1 The main roof conductor shall be run adjacent to the vertical roof members so that the single cable from the strike termination device is as short as possible and in no case longer than 16 ft (4.9 m).

4.6.8.2 The connection of the single cable to the down conductor shall be made with a tee splice or other connector listed for the purpose, as shown in Figure 4.6.8.2.

4.6.9 Open Areas in Flat Roofs. The perimeter of open areas, such as light or mechanical wells, shall be protected if the open area perimeter exceeds 300 ft (90 m), provided both rectangular dimensions exceed 50 ft (15 m).

4.6.10 Domed or Rounded Roofs. Strike termination devices shall be located so that no portion of the structure is located outside a zone of protection, as set forth in Section 4.7.



Note: Air terminal tip configurations can be sharp or blunt.

FIGURE 4.6.8.2 Strike Termination Devices Installed on Vertical Roof Members.

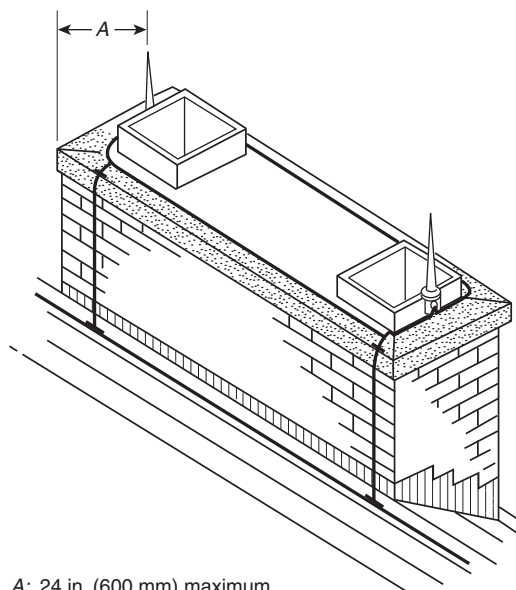
4.6.11 Chimneys, Vents, and Other Objects on Roofs Not in a Zone of Protection. Strike termination devices shall be required on all objects not located within a zone of protection, including metal objects having a metal thickness of less than $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) except as permitted in 4.6.11.1 through 4.6.11.4.

4.6.11.1 Metal objects having a metal thickness of $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) or more not located in a zone of protection shall require connection to the lightning protection system in accordance with the following:

- (1) The metal object shall be connected to the lightning protection system using a main-size lightning conductor.
- (2) The main-size conductor connecting the metal object shall provide two or more paths in accordance with Section 4.8.
- (3) The main-size conductor shall be connected to the metal object with a main-size connector having a surface contact area of not less than 3 in.² (1940 mm²) or a minimum of 1½ in. (38 mm) of contact along the axis of a round surface.
- (4) The main-size conductor shall be permitted to be connected to the metal object in accordance with the provisions for connection to framework in 4.18.3.1, 4.18.3.2, and 4.18.3.3.

4.6.11.2* Required strike termination devices shall be installed on objects, as shown in Figure 4.6.11.2, so that the distance from a strike termination device to an outside corner or the distance perpendicular to an outside edge is not greater than 24 in. (600 mm).

4.6.11.3 Where only one strike termination device is required on an object, at least one main-size conductor shall connect the



A: 24 in. (600 mm) maximum

Note: Air terminal tip configurations can be sharp or blunt.

▲ FIGURE 4.6.11.2 Air Terminals on a Chimney.

strike termination device to a main conductor providing two or more paths to ground from that location in accordance with Section 4.8 and 4.8.2.

4.6.11.4 Objects on roofs that are less than 10 in. (254 mm) above the surface of the roof shall not require strike termination devices unless they are located within 3 ft (1 m) of the ridge or roof edge.

4.6.12 Metal Rooftop Units. Strike termination devices shall be required in accordance with 4.6.12.1 through 4.6.12.3.3 on all rooftop mechanical units with continuous metal housings less than $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) thick, such as air-conditioning/heating units, metal air intake/exhaust housings, and cooling towers, that are not located in a zone of protection.

4.6.12.1 Air terminals shall be installed in accordance with 4.6.2 through 4.6.5.

4.6.12.2 Air terminals shall be mounted to metal rooftop units by using one of the following methods:

- (1) Adhered with adhesive bases to the metal units housing.
- (2) Secured on bases having a minimum contact area of 3 in.² (1940 mm²), each to the bare metal of the unit's housing using mechanical fasteners.
- (3) Drilled, tapped, and screwed directly into the unit's frame in accordance with 4.18.3.2 and 4.18.3.3.

4.6.12.3 Where the air terminal is mounted in accordance with 4.6.12.2(2) or 4.6.12.2(3), the unit's metal housing shall be permitted to be used as a main conductor where the housing minimum thickness is 0.064 in. (1.63 mm) and is electrically continuous.

4.6.12.3.1 At least two main-size conductors shall be installed to connect the unit to the lightning protection system.

4.6.12.3.2 The connection shall be made to bare metal at the base or lower edges of the unit using main-size lightning conductors and bonding devices that have a surface contact area of not less than 3 in.² (1940 mm²) and shall provide two or more paths to ground, as is required for strike termination devices.

4.6.12.3.3 The two main bonding plates shall be located as far apart as practicable at the base or lower edges of the unit's electrically continuous metal housing and connected to the lightning protection system.

4.6.13* Movable or Rotating Objects on Roofs. Movable or rotating metal objects on roofs shall be protected in accordance with 4.6.13.1 or 4.6.13.2.

4.6.13.1 Where practicable, movable or rotating objects on roofs shall be placed in a zone of protection by using strike termination devices.

4.6.13.2 Movable or rotating metal objects outside a zone of protection shall be connected as follows:

- (1) The fixed portion of movable or rotating metal objects on roofs shall be connected to the lightning protection system in accordance with 4.6.11.1.
- (2) A bonding jumper connecting the metal movable or rotating portion to the fixed portion shall be permitted.

4.7 Zones of Protection. The geometry of the structure shall determine the zone of protection.

4.7.1 One or more of the following methods shall be used to determine the overall zone of protection:

- (1) Air terminal placements, as described in Section 4.6
- (2) The angle method, as described in 4.7.2
- (3) The rolling sphere method, as described in 4.7.3

4.7.2 Multiple-Level Roofs.

4.7.2.1 For structures with multiple-level roofs no more than 50 ft (15 m) in height, the zone of protection shall include areas as identified in 4.7.2.3 and 4.7.2.4.

4.7.2.2 The zone of protection shall be permitted to be delineated as a cone, with the apex located at the highest point of the strike termination device and its surface formed by a 45-degree or 63-degree angle from the vertical, based on the height of the strike termination device above the ground as defined in 4.7.2.3 and 4.7.2.4.

4.7.2.3* Structures that do not exceed 25 ft (7.6 m) above earth shall be considered to protect lower portions of a structure located within a one-to-two zone of protection as shown in Figure 4.7.2.3(a) and Figure 4.7.2.3(b).

4.7.2.4* Structures that do not exceed 50 ft (15 m) above the earth shall be considered to protect lower portions of a structure located within a one-to-one zone of protection, as shown in Figure 4.7.2.4(a) and Figure 4.7.2.4(b).

4.7.3 Rolling Sphere Method.

4.7.3.1* The zone of protection shall include the space not intruded by a rolling sphere having a radius of the striking distance determined for the type of structure being protected, as shown in Figure 4.7.3.1.

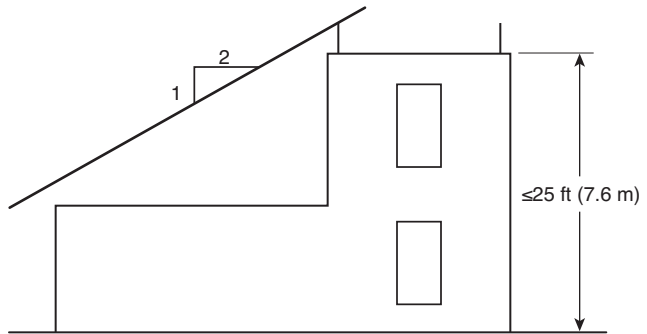


FIGURE 4.7.2.3(a) Lower Roof Protection for Flat-Roof Buildings 25 ft (7.6 m) or Less in Height.

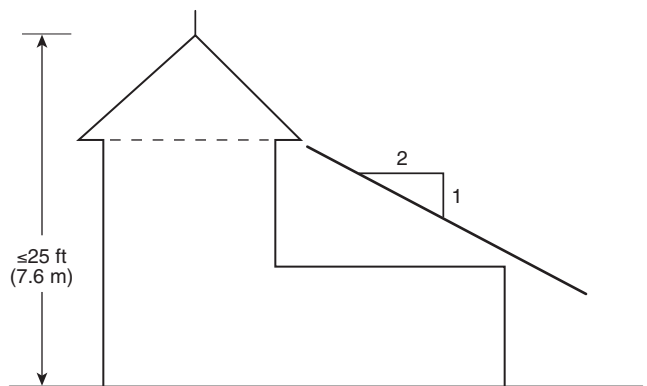


FIGURE 4.7.2.3(b) Lower Roof Protection Provided by Pitched-Roof Buildings 25 ft (7.6 m) or Less in Height.

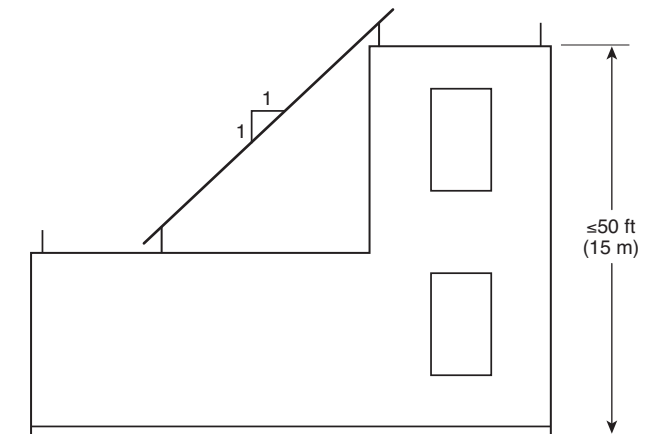


FIGURE 4.7.2.4(a) Lower Roof Protection for Buildings 50 ft (15 m) or Less in Height.

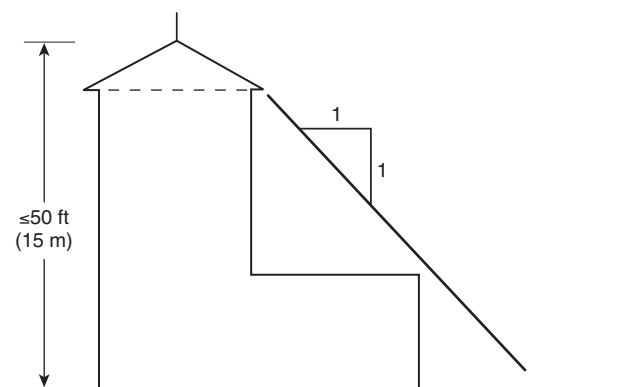


FIGURE 4.7.2.4(b) Lower Roof Protection Provided by Pitched-Roof Buildings 50 ft (15 m) or Less in Height.

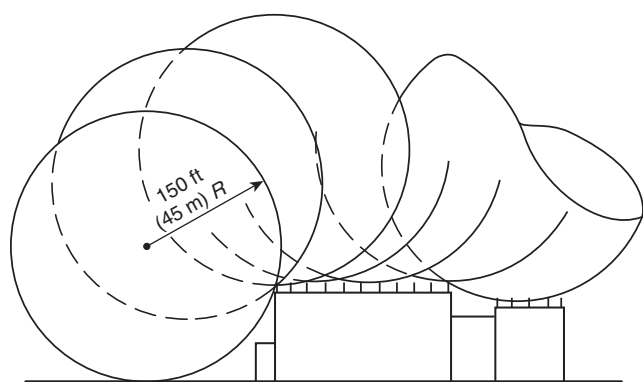


FIGURE 4.7.3.1 Zone of Protection Depicting Rolling Sphere Method.

4.7.3.1.1 Where the sphere is tangent to earth and resting against a strike termination device, all space in the vertical plane between the two points of contact and under the sphere shall be considered to be in the zone of protection. (See Figure 4.7.3.1.1.)

4.7.3.1.2 A zone of protection shall also be formed where such a sphere is resting on two or more strike termination devices and shall include the space in the vertical plane under the sphere and between those devices, as shown in Figure 4.7.3.1.

4.7.3.1.3 All possible placements of the sphere shall be considered when determining the overall zone of protection using the rolling sphere method.

4.7.3.1.4 The striking distance shall not exceed 150 ft (45 m).

4.7.3.2* For structure heights exceeding the striking distance above earth or above a lower strike termination device, the zone of protection shall be the space in the vertical plane between the points of contact and also under the sphere where the sphere is resting against a vertical surface of the structure and the lower strike termination device(s) or earth.

4.7.3.3 Under the rolling sphere method, the horizontal protected distance found geometrically by Figure A.4.7.3.1 also shall be permitted to be calculated using the following formula (units shall be consistent, ft or m):

[4.7.3.3]

$$d = \sqrt{h_1(2R - h_1)} - \sqrt{h_2(2R - h_2)}$$

where:

d = horizontal protected distance (ft or m)

h_1 = height of the higher roof (ft or m)

R = rolling sphere striking distance radius (ft or m)

h_2 = height of the lower roof (top of the object) (ft or m)

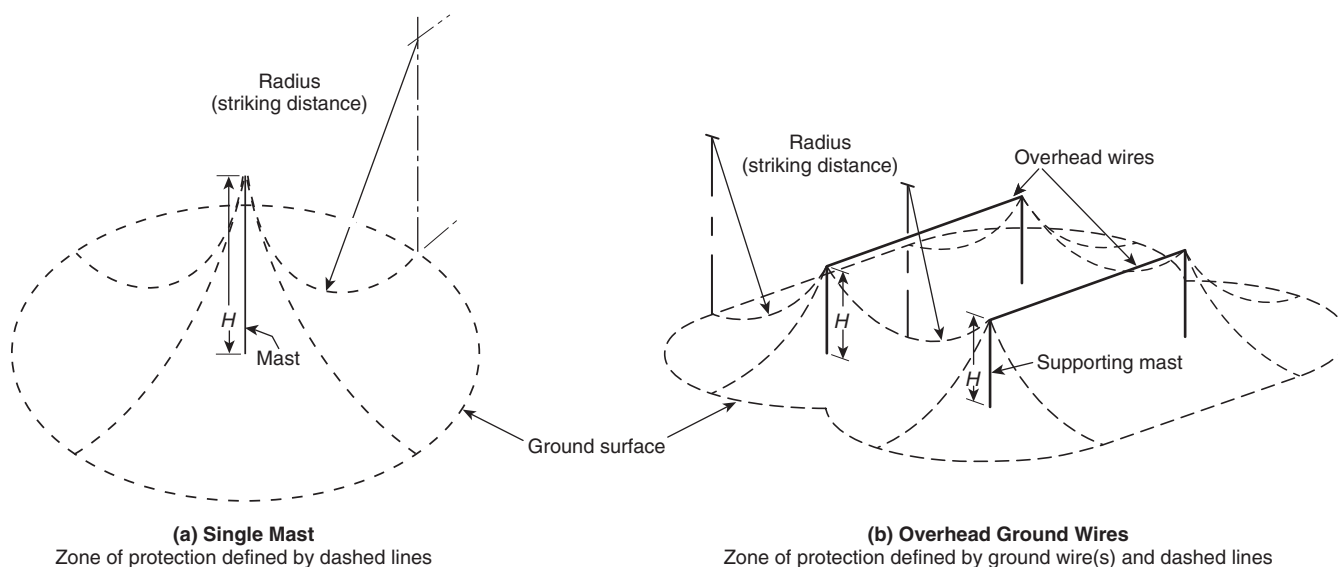


FIGURE 4.7.3.1.1 Single Mast Zone of Protection (a) and Overhead Ground Wires Zone of Protection (b).

4.7.3.3.1 For the formula to be valid, the sphere shall be either tangent to the lower roof or in contact with the earth and in contact with the vertical side of the higher portion of the structure.

4.7.3.3.2 In addition, the difference in heights between the upper and lower roofs or earth shall be the striking distance or less.

4.8 Conductors. Main conductors shall comply with all of the following:

- (1) Interconnect all strike termination devices
- (2) Form two or more paths from each strike termination device downward, horizontally, or rising at no more than $\frac{1}{4}$ slope to connections with grounding electrodes, except as permitted by 4.8.1 and 4.8.2
- (3) Permit one rising path not to exceed 50 ft (15 m) in length on pitched roofs
- (4) Permit one rising path not exceeding $\frac{1}{4}$ slope on flat or gently sloping roofs

4.8.1* One-Way Path. Strike termination devices on a lower roof level that are interconnected by a conductor run from a higher roof level shall require only one horizontal or downward path to ground, provided the lower level roof conductor run does not exceed 40 ft (12 m).

4.8.2 Dead Ends. A “dead ended” main conductor shall be permitted between a single strike termination device, connector, or fitting and a main conductor run under all of the following conditions:

- (1) Where the main-size conductor run to which the dead end is connected has a two-way path to ground
- (2) At a main protected roof level, where the horizontal portion of the dead-end conductor is not more than 8 ft (2.4 m) in total length
- (3) On a roof below the main protected roof level, where the dead-end conductor is not more than 16 ft (4.9 m) in total length, as shown in Figure 4.8.2
- (4) Where all dead-end conductor runs maintain a horizontal or downward course from the strike termination device to the connection point with the main conductor run

4.8.3 Substitution of Main Conductor.

4.8.3.1 Ancillary metal parts of a structure, such as eave troughs, downspouts, ladders, chutes, or other metal parts except as permitted in 4.18.1, shall not be substituted for the main conductor.

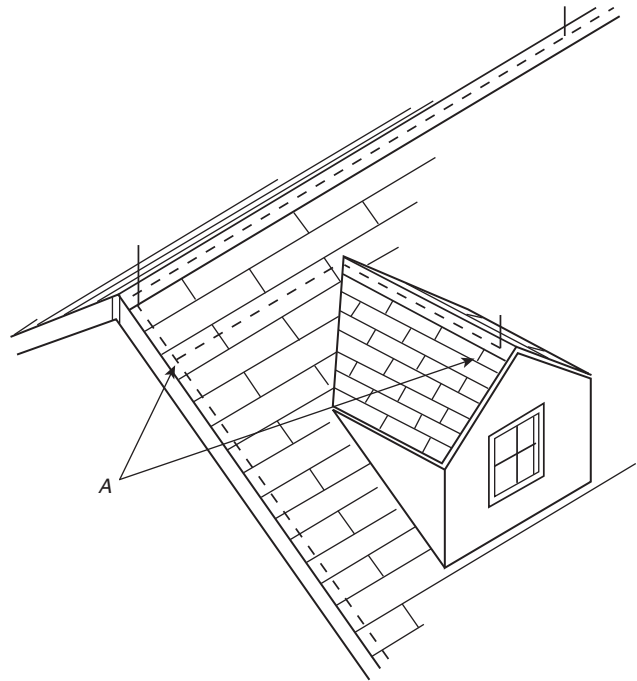
4.8.3.2 Permanent exterior metal handrails and ladders that are subject to direct lightning strikes (e.g., on roofs or between roofs) and are electrically continuous shall be permitted to be used as main conductors where the minimum thickness is 0.064 in. (1.63 mm).

4.8.3.3 Metal roofing or siding having a thickness of less than $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) shall not be substituted for main conductors.

4.8.4* “U” or “V” Pockets.

4.8.4.1 Conductors shall maintain coursing free from “U” or “V” (down and up) pockets.

4.8.4.2 “U” and “V” pockets shall be provided with a down conductor from the base of the pocket to ground or to an adjacent down conductor, as shown in Figure 4.8.4.2.



A: Permissible dead-end total conductor length not over 16 ft (4.9 m)

FIGURE 4.8.2 Dead End.

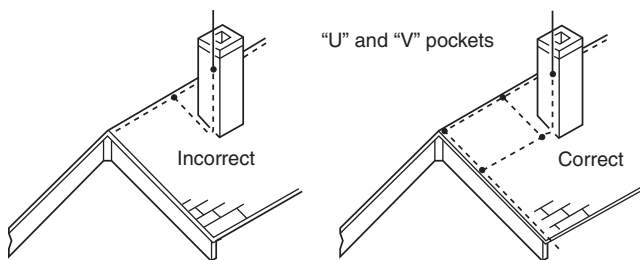


FIGURE 4.8.4.2 Pockets.

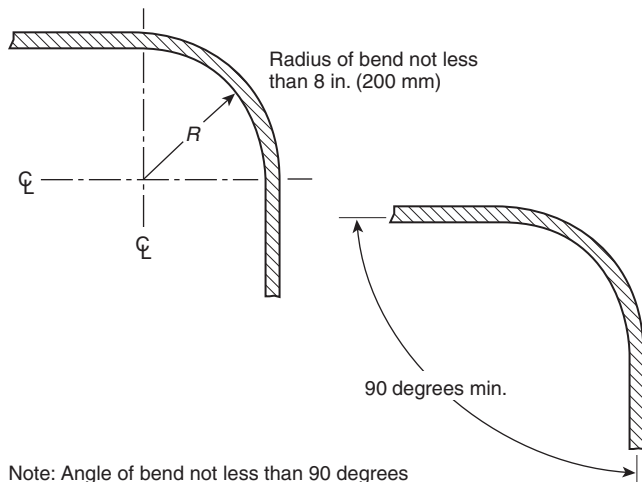
4.8.4.3 Conductors shall be permitted to be routed in an upward coursing for a vertical distance of no greater than 8 in. (200 mm) at through-roof or through-wall connections only, in order to mitigate tripping hazards, provided that the coursing complies with 4.8.5.

4.8.5 Conductor Bends. No bend of a conductor shall form an included angle of less than 90 degrees, nor shall it have a radius of bend less than 8 in. (200 mm), as shown in Figure 4.8.5.

4.8.6 Conductor Supports.

4.8.6.1 Conductors shall be permitted to be coursed through air without support for a distance of 3 ft (1 m) or less.

4.8.6.2 Conductors that must be coursed through air for distances longer than that permitted in 4.8.6.1 shall be provided with a positive means of support that will prevent damage or displacement of the conductor.



Note: Angle of bend not less than 90 degrees

FIGURE 4.8.5 Conductor Bends.

4.8.7 Roof Conductors.

4.8.7.1 Roof conductors shall be coursed along ridges of gable, gambrel, and hip roofs; around the perimeter of flat roofs; behind or on top of parapets; and across flat or gently sloping roof areas as required to interconnect all strike termination devices.

4.8.7.2 Conductors shall be coursed through or around obstructions (e.g., cupolas and ventilators) in a horizontal plane with the main conductor.

4.8.8 Cross-Run Conductors.

4.8.8.1* Cross-run conductors (main conductors) shall be required to interconnect the strike termination devices on flat or gently sloping roofs that exceed 50 ft (15 m) in width.

4.8.8.2 Cross-run conductors shall be connected to the main perimeter cable at intervals not exceeding 150 ft (45 m), as shown in Figure 4.6.5.1(a).

4.8.9 Down Conductors.

4.8.9.1 Down conductors shall be as widely separated as practicable.

4.8.9.2 The location of down conductors shall depend on considerations such as the following:

- (1) Placement of strike termination devices
- (2) Most direct coursing of conductors
- (3) Earth conditions
- (4) Security against displacement
- (5) Location of large metallic bodies
- (6) Location of underground metallic piping systems

4.8.10 Number of Down Conductors. At least two down conductors shall be provided on any kind of structure, including steeples.

4.8.10.1 Structures exceeding 250 ft (76 m) in perimeter shall have a down conductor for every 100 ft (30 m) of perimeter or fraction thereof.

4.8.10.2 The total number of down conductors on structures having flat or gently sloping roofs shall be such that the average

distance between all down conductors along the perimeter of the structure does not exceed 100 ft (30 m).

4.8.10.3 Irregularly shaped structures shall have additional down conductors as necessary to provide a two-way path from each strike termination device.

4.8.10.4 For a flat or gently sloping roof structure, only the perimeter of the roof areas requiring protection shall be measured.

4.8.10.5 When determining the perimeter of a pitched roof structure, the horizontal projection (footprint) of the protected roof shall be measured as shown in Figure 4.8.10.5.

4.8.10.6 Lower roofs or projections that are located within a zone of protection shall not be required to be included in the perimeter measurement.

4.8.11 Protecting Down Conductors. Down conductors located where subject to physical damage or displacement shall be guarded.

4.8.11.1 Metallic guards shall be bonded at each end.

4.8.11.2 The down conductor shall be protected for a minimum distance of 6 ft (1.8 m) above grade level.

4.8.12 Down Conductors Entering Corrosive Soil. Down conductors entering corrosive soil shall be protected against corrosion by a protective covering beginning at a point 3 ft (1 m) above grade level and extending for their entire length below grade.

Δ 4.8.13* Down Conductors and Structural Columns. Down conductors coursed in reinforced concrete columns or coursed on or within the calculated bonding distance of reinforced concrete columns or structural steel columns in accordance with 4.15.2.5 or 4.15.2.6 shall be bonded to the reinforcing steel or the structural steel member at its upper and lower extremities.

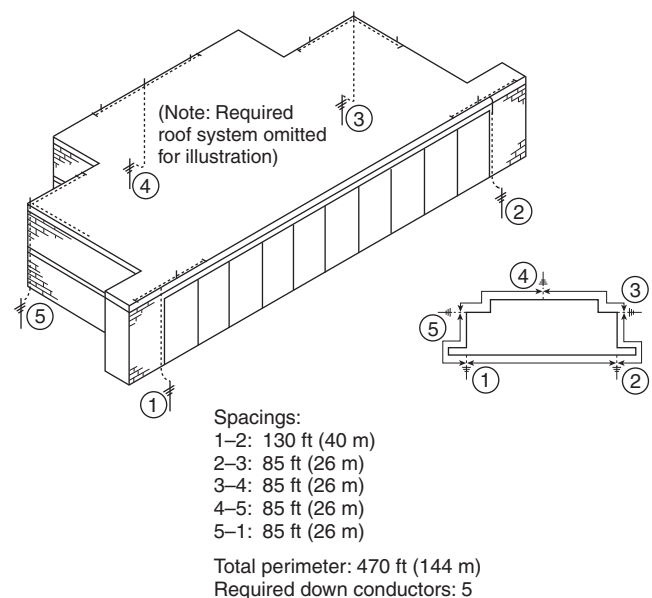


FIGURE 4.8.10.5 Quantity of Down Conductors.

4.8.13.1 In the case of long, vertical, metallic members, an additional connection shall be made at intervals not exceeding 200 ft (60 m).

4.8.13.2 The connections for 4.8.13.1 shall be made using listed clamps or listed bonding plates or by welding or brazing.

4.8.13.3 Where the bonding requirements of 4.8.13.1 and 4.8.13.2 are not satisfied, provisions shall be made to ensure the required interconnection of these parallel vertical paths.

4.8.14 Down Conductors in Nonmetallic Enclosures. The use of PVC conduit or other nonmetallic chase shall not eliminate the need to satisfy the bonding requirements of Sections 4.14 and 4.15.

4.9 Conductor Fasteners. Conductors shall be fastened to the structure upon which they are placed at intervals not exceeding 3 ft (1 m).

4.9.1 Attachment by nails, screws, bolts, or adhesive shall be permitted to be used as necessary.

4.9.2 The fasteners shall not be subject to breakage.

4.9.3 Roofing membrane strapped over the conductor shall not be considered a suitable fastener.

4.9.4 Fasteners shall be of the same materials as the conductor or of a material equally resistant to corrosion as that of the conductor.

4.9.5 No combination of materials shall be used that will form an electrolytic couple of such a nature that, in the presence of moisture, corrosion will be accelerated.

4.10 Masonry Anchors. Masonry anchors used to attach lightning protection materials shall have a minimum outside diameter of ¼ in. (6.4 mm).

4.10.1 Holes made to receive the body of the anchor shall be of the correct size and made in the brick, stone, or other masonry unit rather than in mortar joints.

4.10.2 Where the anchors are installed, the fit shall be tight against moisture, thus reducing the possibility of damage due to freezing.

4.11 Connectors. Connectors shall be used at all “end-to-end,” “tee,” “Y,” or parallel splices of lightning conductors.

4.11.1 Connectors shall be attached so as to withstand a pull test of 200 lb (890 N).

4.11.2 Fittings used for required connections to metal bodies in or on a structure shall be secured to the metal body by bolting, brazing, welding, screwing, or high-compression connectors listed for the purpose.

4.11.3 Conductor connections shall be of the bolted, exothermically welded, high-compression, or crimp type.

Δ **4.11.4** Crimp connections shall not be used with Class II conductors.

4.12 Grounding Electrodes.

4.12.1* General.

Δ **4.12.1.1*** Each down conductor shall terminate to one of the following:

- (1) One or more grounding electrodes dedicated to the lightning protection system
- (2)* A grounding electrode system of a building, structure, or facility that has multiple grounding electrodes bonded together with a ground ring electrode meeting the requirements of 4.12.4

4.12.1.2 The design, size, and depth of grounding electrodes shall comply with 4.12.2 through 4.12.8.

4.12.1.3 Underground metallic piping or ground rod-type electrodes for electrical, communications, or other systems shall not be used in lieu of lightning grounding electrodes.

4.12.1.4 The down conductor(s) shall be attached permanently to the grounding electrode system by bolting, brazing, welding, or high-compression connectors listed for the purpose.

4.12.1.5 Where practicable, grounding electrodes shall be installed below the frost line (excluding shallow topsoil conditions).

4.12.1.6* In corrosive environments, the use of stainless-steel alloy grounding electrodes shall be permitted.

4.12.2 Ground Rods.

4.12.2.1* Ground rods shall be not less than ½ in. (12.7 mm) in diameter and 8 ft (2.4 m) long.

4.12.2.2 Ground rods shall be copper-clad steel, solid copper, or stainless steel.

4.12.2.3 Rods shall be free of paint or other nonconductive coatings.

4.12.2.4 Ground Rod Depth.

4.12.2.4.1 The ground rods shall extend vertically not less than 10 ft (3 m) into the earth, as illustrated in Figure 4.12.2.4.1.

4.12.2.4.2 The earth shall be compacted and made tight against the length of the conductor and ground rod.

4.12.2.5* Multiple Ground Rods. Where multiple connected ground rods are used, the separation between any two ground rods shall be at least the sum of their driven depths, where practicable.

4.12.3* Concrete-Encased Electrodes. Concrete-encased electrodes shall be used only in new construction.

4.12.3.1 The electrode shall be located near the bottom of a concrete foundation or footing that is in direct contact with the earth and shall be encased by not less than 2 in. (50 mm) of concrete.

4.12.3.2* The concrete-encased electrode shall consist of one of the following:

- (1) Not less than 20 ft (6 m) of bare copper main-size conductor
- (2) At least 20 ft (6 m) of one or more bare or electrically conductive coated steel reinforcing bars or rods not less than ½ in. (12.7 mm) in diameter that have been effectively bonded together by welding, structural mechanical coupling, or overlapping 20 diameters and wire tying

■ **4.12.3.3** Nonconductive or resistive coatings on steel reinforcing bars shall not be permitted.

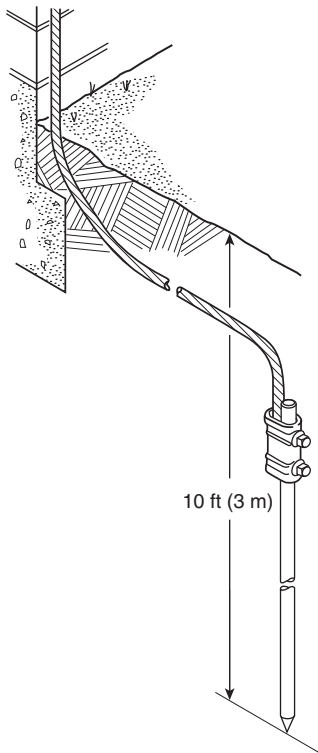


FIGURE 4.12.2.4.1 Typical Single Ground Rod Installation.

4.12.3.4 A test or connection point shall be provided on each concrete-encased electrode to enable periodic maintenance and testing of the ground system. (See Figure 4.12.3.4.)

4.12.4 Ground Ring Electrode. A ground ring electrode encircling a structure shall be as shown in Figure 4.12.4.

4.12.4.1* The ground ring electrode shall be in direct contact with earth at a depth of not less than 18 in. (450 mm) or encased in a concrete footing in accordance with 4.12.3.

4.12.4.2 The ground ring electrode shall be a main-size (lightning) conductor or a grounding conductor of equivalent or greater cross-sectional area.

4.12.5* Radials.

4.12.5.1 A radial electrode system shall consist of one or more main-size conductors, each in a separate trench extending outward from the location of each down conductor.

4.12.5.2 Each radial electrode shall be not less than 12 ft (3.6 m) in length.

4.12.5.3* The radial electrode shall be buried not less than 18 in. (450 mm) below grade.

4.12.6 Plate Electrode or Ground Plate Electrode.

4.12.6.1* A ground plate or plate electrode shall have a minimum thickness of 0.032 in. (0.8 mm) and a minimum surface area of 2 ft² (0.18 m²).

4.12.6.2* The ground plate electrode shall be buried not less than 18 in. (450 mm) below grade.

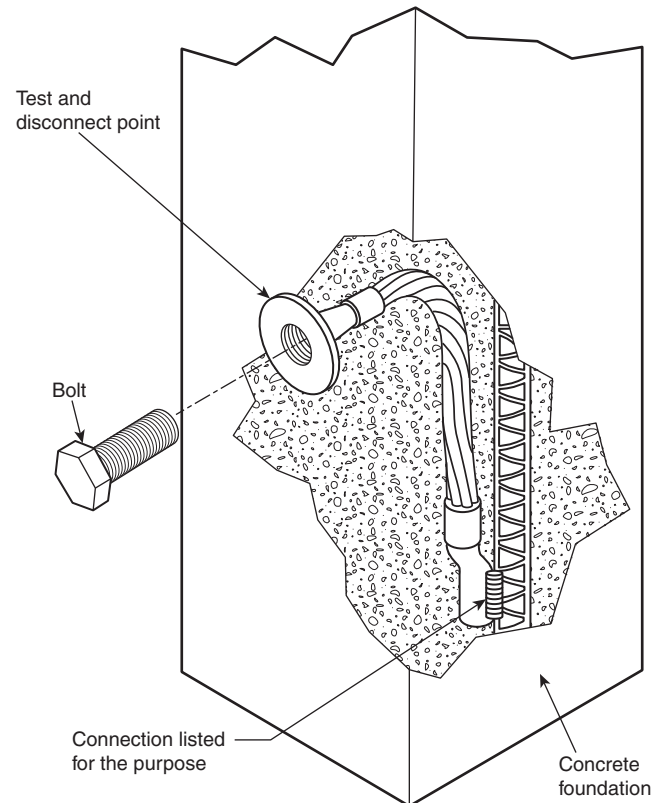


FIGURE 4.12.3.4 Typical Concrete-Encased Electrode Test and Disconnect Point.

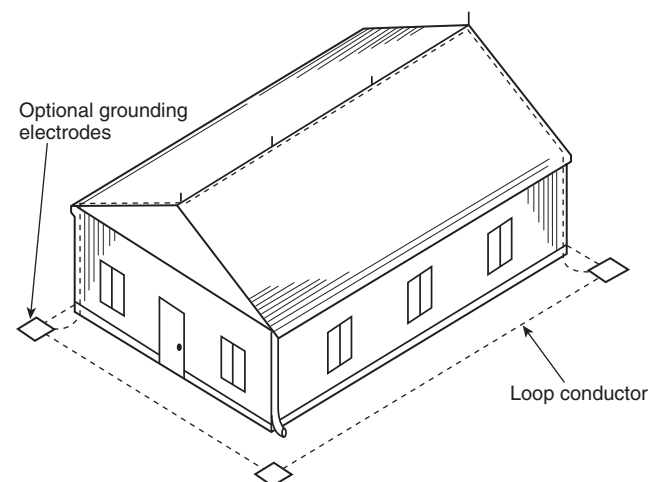


FIGURE 4.12.4 Typical Ground Ring Electrode Installation.

4.12.7 Combinations. Combinations of the grounding electrodes in Section 4.12 shall be permitted.

4.12.8 Grounding Electrode Selection Criteria. The site limitations and soil conditions shall determine the selection of the type or combinations of types of grounding electrodes used.

4.12.8.1* Shallow Topsoil. The methods in 4.12.3 through 4.12.7 shall be used in shallow topsoil conditions where practicable.

4.12.8.1.1 Where topsoil depth is less than 18 in. (450 mm), it shall be permitted to provide a ground ring electrode, radials, and/or ground plate electrodes buried at the maximum depth of topsoil available.

4.12.8.1.2* The grounding electrode for shallow topsoil shall be one or more of the following, buried to the maximum depth of topsoil available:

- (1) A ground ring electrode, in accordance with 4.12.4, a minimum distance of 24 in. (600 mm) from the foundation or exterior footing
- (2) Radial(s) in accordance with 4.12.5
- (3) A plate electrode in accordance with 4.12.6, a minimum distance of 24 in. (600 mm) from the foundation or exterior footing

▲ 4.12.8.1.3 Bedrock.

N 4.12.8.1.3.1 Where use of the methods in 4.12.8.1.2 is not possible, radial(s) shall be permitted to be laid directly on bedrock and extend a minimum distance of 12 ft (3.6 m) from the foundation or exterior footing.

N 4.12.8.1.3.2 A ground loop conductor encircling the structure shall be permitted to be laid directly on bedrock a minimum distance of 24 in. (600 mm) from the foundation or exterior footing.

4.12.8.1.3.3 In those cases where the grounding conductor is laid directly on bedrock, the conductor shall be secured to the bedrock every 3 ft (1 m) with nails, conductive cement, or a conductive adhesive to ensure electrical contact and protect against movement.

4.12.8.2 Sandy Soil Conditions. Multiple grounding electrodes shall be used to augment the lightning grounding electrode system in installations characterized by high soil resistivity, such as in sandy or gravelly soil conditions.

4.12.8.3 Zero Property Line Conditions. The lack of access to property outside the building footprint shall require additional considerations for grounding electrodes.

4.12.8.3.1* Grounding electrodes located under basement slabs or in crawl spaces shall be installed as near as practicable to the outside perimeter of the structure.

4.12.8.3.2 Ground rods in accordance with 4.12.2, ground ring electrodes in accordance with 4.12.4, radials in accordance with 4.12.5, or ground plate electrodes in accordance with 4.12.6 shall be installed below the structure in compacted earth, tight against the electrode.

4.12.8.3.3 Where earth depth under the building is insufficient to meet electrode placement requirements, concrete-encased electrodes or the requirements for shallow topsoil shall be used.

4.13 Common Bonding of Grounded Systems.

4.13.1* General. All grounded media and buried metallic conductors (including underground metallic piping systems) that can assist in providing a path for lightning currents in or on a structure shall be interconnected to the lightning protection system within 12 ft (3.6 m) vertically of the base of the structure to provide a common ground potential.

4.13.2* For structures exceeding 60 ft (18 m) in height, the interconnection of the lightning protection system grounding electrodes and other grounded media shall be in the form of a ground loop conductor.

4.13.3* This interconnection shall include all building grounding electrode systems, including lightning protection, electric service, communication, and antenna system grounding electrodes.

▲ 4.13.4 Underground Metallic Piping Systems.

N 4.13.4.1 Underground metallic piping systems requiring interconnection to the lightning protection system shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- (1) Water service
- (2) Well casings located within 25 ft (7.6 m) of the lightning protection grounding system
- (3) Gas piping
- (4) Underground conduits
- (5) Underground liquefied petroleum gas piping systems

N 4.13.4.2 If a water pipe is not electrically continuous due to the use of nonconductive pipe sections or for any other reason, the nonconductive sections shall be bridged with main-size conductors or the connection shall be made at a point where the required electrical continuity can be ensured.

4.13.5* Where the building grounded systems noted in 4.13.1 are interconnected at a common accessible point in or on the structure, the lightning protection system shall have only one main-size conductor connected to the common bonding point. This common bonding point shall be permitted to include a ground bar, a section of water pipe, or the metallic structural frame in accordance with *NFPA 70*.

4.13.6 Bonding Interconnections.

4.13.6.1 Where bonding of the lightning protection grounding system, grounded media, and buried metallic conductors has not been accomplished at a common point, interconnection shall be provided according to the following:

- (1) Grounded media and buried metallic conductors shall be bonded to the lightning protection grounding system below a height 12 ft (3.6 m) vertically above the base of the structure.
- (2)* Where grounded media and buried metallic conductors are inherently bonded through construction to the lightning protection grounding system, additional bonding shall be permitted but not required.
- (3) The continuous metal framework of a structure shall be connected to the lightning protection system (*see 4.8.13 and Section 4.18*).
- (4) Main-size lightning conductors shall be used for direct connection of grounded media and buried metallic conductors to the lightning protection system.

- (5) A continuous metal water pipe system providing interconnection of building grounded systems shall be connected to the lightning protection system.
- (6)* Interconnection to a gas line shall be made on the customer's side of the meter.

4.13.6.2* Where galvanic corrosion is a concern or where a direct bond is prohibited by local code, an isolating spark gap shall be permitted.

4.14 Potential Equalization.

4.14.1 Ground-Level Potential Equalization. Ground-level potential equalization shall be required in accordance with Section 4.13.

4.14.2* Roof-Level Potential Equalization. For structures exceeding 60 ft (18 m) in height, all grounded media in or on the structure shall be interconnected within 12 ft (3.6 m) of the main roof level.

4.14.3 Intermediate-Level Potential Equalization. Intermediate-level potential equalization shall be accomplished by the interconnection of the lightning protection system down conductors and other grounded media at the intermediate levels between the roof and the base of a structure in accordance with 4.14.3.1 through 4.14.3.3.

4.14.3.1 Steel-Framed Structures. Intermediate-loop conductors shall not be required for steel-framed structures where the framing is electrically continuous.

4.14.3.2 Reinforced Concrete Structures Where the Reinforcement Is Interconnected and Grounded in Accordance with 4.17.3. Down conductors and other grounded media shall be interconnected with a loop conductor at intermediate levels not exceeding 200 ft (60 m).

4.14.3.3 Other Structures. Down conductors and other grounded media shall be interconnected with a loop conductor at intermediate levels not exceeding 60 ft (18 m).

4.14.4 Materials. Horizontal loop conductors used for the interconnection of lightning protection system down conductors, grounding electrodes, or other grounded media shall be sized no smaller than the size required for the main conductor, as listed in Table 4.1.1.1.1 and Table 4.1.1.1.2.

4.15* Bonding of Metal Bodies. Metal bodies not covered by other sections of this standard, located outside or inside a structure, that contribute to lightning hazards because they are grounded or assist in providing a path to ground for lightning currents shall be bonded to the lightning protection system in accordance with Section 4.15.

4.15.1 Long, Vertical Metal Bodies. Long, vertical metal bodies shall be bonded in accordance with 4.15.1.1 through 4.15.1.3.

4.15.1.1 Steel-Framed Structures. Grounded and ungrounded metal bodies exceeding 60 ft (18 m) in vertical length shall be bonded to structural steel members as near as practicable to their extremities unless inherently bonded through construction at those locations.

4.15.1.2 Reinforced Concrete Structures. Grounded and ungrounded metal bodies exceeding 60 ft (18 m) in vertical length in or on reinforced concrete structures, where the reinforcement is interconnected and grounded in accordance with 4.17.3, shall be bonded to the lightning protection system as

near as practicable to their extremities unless inherently bonded through construction at those locations.

4.15.1.3 Other Structures. Bonding of grounded or ungrounded long, vertical metal bodies shall be determined by 4.15.2 or 4.15.4, respectively.

4.15.2 Grounded Metal Bodies. Bonding of grounded metal bodies not covered in 4.15.1 shall be accomplished in accordance with 4.15.2.1 through 4.15.2.6.

4.15.2.1 Where grounded metal bodies have been connected to the lightning protection system at only one extremity, the formula shown in 4.15.2.5 or 4.15.2.6 shall be used to determine whether additional bonding is required.

4.15.2.2 Branches of grounded metal bodies connected to the lightning protection system at their extremities shall require bonding to the lightning protection system in accordance with the formula shown in 4.15.2.5 or 4.15.2.6 if they change vertical direction by more than 12 ft (3.6 m).

4.15.2.3 Grounded metal bodies shall not require additional bonding if the measured dc resistance between the inherently bonded, electrically conductive materials and the nearest lightning protection component is less than 200 milliohms.

4.15.2.4 Grounded metal bodies that maintain a separation distance from the lightning protection system components that is greater than the distance calculated using the bonding distance formulas in 4.15.2.5 or 4.15.2.6 shall be considered isolated and require no further bonding except for that required by Sections 4.13 and 4.14.

4.15.2.5 Structures More Than 40 ft (12 m) in Height.

4.15.2.5.1 Grounded metal bodies shall be bonded to the lightning protection system where located within a calculated bonding distance, D , as determined by the following formula:

[4.15.2.5.1]

$$D = \frac{h}{6n} \times K_m$$

where:

D = calculated bonding distance

h = vertical distance between the bond under consideration and the nearest interconnection to the lightning protection system or ground

n = value related to the number of down conductors that are spaced at least 25 ft (7.6 m) apart, located within a zone of 100 ft (30 m) from the bond in question and where bonding is required within 60 ft (18 m) from the top of any structure

K_m = 1 if the flashover is through air; 0.50 if through dense material such as concrete, brick, wood, and so forth

4.15.2.5.2 The value n shall be calculated as follows: $n = 1$ where there is only one down conductor in this zone; $n = 1.5$ where there are only two down conductors in this zone; $n = 2.25$ where there are three or more down conductors in this zone.

4.15.2.5.3 Where bonding is required below a level 60 ft (18 m) from the top of a structure, n shall be the total number of down conductors in the lightning protection system.

4.15.2.6 Structures 40 ft (12 m) or Less in Height.

4.15.2.6.1 Grounded metal bodies shall be bonded to the lightning protection system where located within a calculated bonding distance, D , as determined by the following formula:

[4.15.2.6.1]

$$D = \frac{h}{6n} \times K_m$$

where:

D = calculated bonding distance

h = either the height of the building or the vertical distance from the nearest bonding connection from the grounded metal body to the lightning protection system and the point on the down conductor where the bonding connection is being considered

n = value related to the number of down conductors that are spaced at least 25 ft (7.6 m) apart and located within a zone of 100 ft (30 m) from the bond in question

K_m = 1 if the flashover is through air; 0.50 if through dense material such as concrete, brick, wood, and so forth

4.15.2.6.2 The value n shall be calculated as follows: $n = 1$ where there is only one down conductor in this zone; $n = 1.5$ where there are only two down conductors in this zone; $n = 2.25$ where there are three or more down conductors in this zone.

4.15.3 Long Horizontal Metal Bodies on Roofs. Long horizontal grounded metal bodies on roofs shall be bonded in accordance with 4.15.3.1 through 4.15.3.3.

4.15.3.1 Grounded metal bodies on roofs exceeding 60 ft (18 m) in horizontal length shall be bonded to the lightning protection system as near as practicable to their extremities unless inherently bonded through construction at those locations.

Δ **4.15.3.2** Horizontal grounded metal bodies that are parallel to a main lightning conductor and within the bonding distance calculated in 4.15.2.5 or 4.15.2.6 shall be bonded to the main conductor at intervals averaging not more than 100 ft (30 m) along the main conductor unless inherently bonded through construction at those locations.

4.15.3.3 Horizontal grounded metal bodies that cross a main conductor shall be bonded to the main conductor where they cross the conductor unless inherently bonded through construction at that location.

4.15.4* Ungrounded Metallic Bodies.

4.15.4.1 The effect due to ungrounded metallic bodies shall be determined by using Figure 4.15.4.1 according to either 4.15.4.1.1 or 4.15.4.1.2.

4.15.4.1.1 If $a + b$ is less than the calculated bonding distance, then A shall be bonded to B directly.

4.15.4.1.2 If $a + b$ is greater than the calculated bonding distance, bonds shall not be required.

4.15.4.2 A bonding connection shall be required where the total of the shortest distance between the lightning conductor and the ungrounded metal body and the shortest distance between the ungrounded metal body and the grounded metal

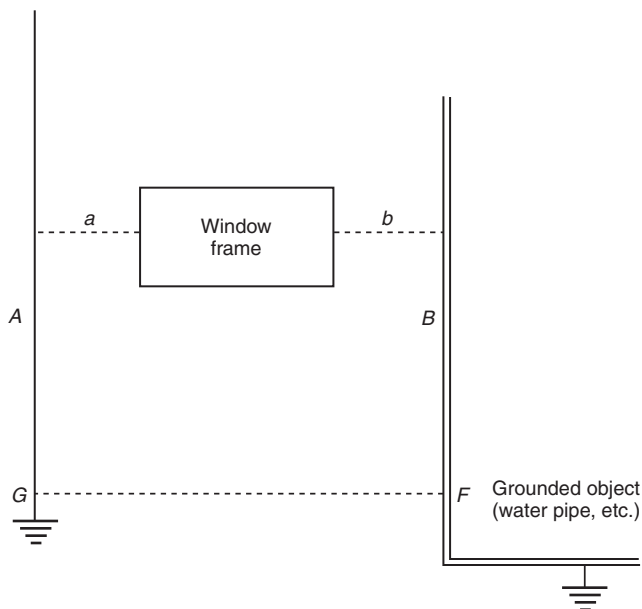


FIGURE 4.15.4.1 Effect of Ungrounded Metallic Bodies, Such as a Window Frame, in Nonconductive Media.

body is equal to or less than the bonding distance as calculated in accordance with 4.15.2.

4.15.4.3 Bonding connections shall be made between the lightning protection system and the grounded metal body.

4.15.4.3.1 The bonding connection shall be permitted to be made directly to the grounded metal body.

4.15.4.3.2 The bonding connection shall be permitted to be made from the lightning protection system to the ungrounded metal body and from the ungrounded metal body to the grounded metal body.

Δ 4.15.5 Materials.

N **4.15.5.1** Conductors used for the bonding of grounded or ungrounded metal bodies requiring connection to the lightning protection system shall be sized in accordance with the bonding conductor requirements in Table 4.1.1.1.1 and Table 4.1.1.1.2.

N **4.15.5.2** Connectors for equipotential bonding shall have a minimum surface contact area of 0.021 in² (0.133 cm²) for copper and 0.032 in² (0.208 cm²) for aluminum.

4.16* Metal Antenna Masts and Supports. Metal antenna masts or supports located on a protected structure shall be connected to the lightning protection system using main-size conductors and listed fittings and connectors unless they are within a zone of protection.

4.17 Concealed Systems.

4.17.1 General.

4.17.1.1 Requirements covering exposed systems also shall apply to concealed systems, except conductors shall be permitted to be cased under roofing materials, under roof framing,

behind exterior wall facing, between wall studding, in conduit chases, or embedded directly in concrete or masonry construction.

4.17.1.2 Where a conductor is run in metal conduit, it shall be bonded to the conduit at the point where it enters the conduit, at the point where it emerges from the conduit, and at all locations where the conduit is not electrically continuous.

4.17.2 Masonry Chimneys. Chimney strike termination devices and conductors shall be permitted to be concealed within masonry chimneys or to be attached to the exterior of masonry chimneys and routed through the structure to concealed main conductors.

4.17.3 Concealment in Steel-Reinforced Concrete. Conductors or other components of the lightning protection system concealed in steel-reinforced concrete units shall be connected to the reinforcing steel.

4.17.3.1 Concealed down conductors shall be connected to the vertical reinforcing steel in accordance with 4.8.13.

4.17.3.2 Roof conductors or other concealed horizontal conductor runs shall be connected to the reinforcing steel at intervals not exceeding 100 ft (30 m).

4.17.4 Grounding Electrodes. Grounding electrodes for concealed systems shall comply with Section 4.12.

4.18 Structural Metallic Systems.

4.18.1 General. The metal framework of a structure shall be permitted to be utilized as the main conductor of a lightning protection system if it is equal to or greater than $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) in thickness and is electrically continuous, or it is made electrically continuous by methods specified in 4.18.3.

4.18.2 Strike Termination Devices.

4.18.2.1 Strike termination devices shall be connected to the structural metal framing by direct connection, by use of individual conductors routed through the roof or parapet walls to the steel framework, or by use of an exterior conductor that interconnects all strike termination devices and that is connected to the metal framework.

4.18.2.2 Where an exterior conductor is used in lieu of through-roof penetrations for the interconnection of strike termination devices, it shall be connected to the metal framework of the structure as follows:

- (1) Conductors along a ridge at intervals not exceeding an average distance of 100 ft (30 m), as widely spaced as practicable and at each end in accordance with Section 4.8
- (2) Perimeter roof conductors at intervals not exceeding an average distance of 100 ft (30 m), as widely spaced as practicable and at ends in accordance with Section 4.8
- (3) Cross-run conductors at intervals not exceeding a distance of 150 ft (45 m) in lieu of the requirements of 4.8.8

4.18.3 Connections to Framework. Conductors shall be connected to areas of the structural metal framework that have been cleaned to base metal, by use of one of the following methods:

- (1) Bonding plates having a surface contact area of not less than 8 in.² (5200 mm²)
- (2) Welding

- (3) Brazing
- (4) Drilling and tapping

4.18.3.1 Bonding plates shall have bolt-pressure cable connectors and shall be bolted, welded, or brazed to the structural metal framework so as to maintain electrical continuity.

4.18.3.2 A threaded connector drilled and tapped in the metal framework shall be installed with at least five threads fully engaged and secured with a jam nut or equivalent.

4.18.3.3 The threaded portion of the connector shall be not less than $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (12.7 mm) in diameter.

4.18.3.4* Where corrosion-protective paint or coatings are removed as part of the bonding process, the completed electrical connection shall have corrosion protection equivalent to the original coating.

4.18.4 Grounding Electrodes.

4.18.4.1 Grounding electrodes shall be connected to the structural metal framework at intervals around the perimeter averaging not more than 60 ft (18 m).

4.18.4.2 Connections shall be made as close as practicable to the base of the structural metal framework in accordance with the requirements in 4.18.3.

4.18.5 Bonding Connections. Where metal bodies located within a steel-framed structure are inherently bonded to the structure through the construction, separate bonding connections shall not be required.

4.19 Surge Protection.

4.19.1* General. Surge protection shall comply with the following:

- (1) Type 1 or Type 2 listed surge-protective devices (SPDs) permanently installed on premises wiring systems operating at 1,000 volts or less in accordance with 4.19.2
- (2) Surge arresters permanently installed on circuits, equipment, or systems operating over 1,000 V in accordance with 4.19.3
- (3) Listed surge protectors permanently installed for signal, data, and communication systems in accordance with 4.19.4

4.19.2* Surge-Protective Device (SPD) Requirements.

4.19.2.1 SPDs shall be installed at all power services supplying a building, structure, or equipment.

N 4.19.2.1.1 SPDs shall be an integral part of the service equipment or located immediately adjacent thereto.

• 4.19.2.2 SPDs shall be installed at all points of supply where a service, feeder, or branch circuit conductor or cable enters or exits a building or structure to supply another building or structure and where the conductors or cables are run over 100 ft (30 m).

4.19.2.3* SPDs shall be permitted to be installed anywhere on the load side of a service disconnect overcurrent device or at the point of utilization on the load side of a branch circuit overcurrent protection device up to the equipment served; this protection is in addition to that required by 4.19.2.1 and 4.19.2.2.

4.19.2.4* SPDs shall not be required where, under engineering supervision, it is determined that the surge threat is negligi-

ble, the lines are equivalently protected, or installation would compromise safety.

• **4.19.2.5** The SPD shall protect against surges produced by a 1.2/50- μ s and 8/20- μ s combination waveform generator.

4.19.2.6* SPDs at the service entrance shall have a nominal discharge current (I_n) rating of at least 20 kA 8/20 μ s per phase.

• **4.19.2.7*** The published voltage protection rating (VPR) of the SPD for each mode of protection shall be no greater than that given in Table 4.19.2.7 for the different power distribution systems to which they can be connected.

• **4.19.2.8** The SPD shall be marked with a short-circuit current rating.

N 4.19.2.8.1 The requirement for a short-circuit current rating marking shall not apply to receptacles.

N 4.19.2.8.2 SPDs shall not be installed at a point on the system where the available fault current is in excess of the SPD rating.

4.19.2.9 The maximum continuous operating voltage (MCOV) of the SPD shall be selected to ensure that it is greater than the upper tolerance of the utility power system to which it is connected.

• **N 4.19.2.10** SPDs shall be permitted to be located indoors or outdoors.

N 4.19.2.11 SPDs shall be made inaccessible to unqualified persons unless the SPDs are listed for installation in accessible locations.

N 4.19.2.12* Where used at a point on a circuit, an SPD shall be connected to each ungrounded conductor.

N 4.19.2.12.1 A surge-protective device shall be permitted to be connected between any two conductors — ungrounded conductors, grounded conductors, equipment grounded conductors, or grounding electrode conductors.

N 4.19.2.12.2 The conductors used to connect the SPD to the line or bus and to ground shall not be any longer than necessary and shall have no unnecessary bends.

4.19.2.13* Earth Grounding Electrode. The resistance of the earth electrode system used in the grounding of SPDs shall comply with *NFPA 70*.

4.19.2.14 Physical Characteristics.

4.19.2.14.1 SPDs shall be protected with consideration for the operational environment conditions and according to the manufacturer's installation instructions.

4.19.2.14.2* Enclosures shall be marked with environmental rating(s) by type.

N 4.19.3* Surge Arrester Requirements.

N 4.19.3.1 Surge arresters shall be installed in accordance with 4.19.2.1 and 4.19.2.2 when a building, structure, or equipment operates over 1,000 V.

N 4.19.3.2* The duty cycle rating of a surge arrester shall be not less than 125 percent of the maximum system voltage available at the point of application.

N 4.19.3.3 Surge arresters shall be permitted to be located indoors or outdoors.

N 4.19.3.4 Surge arresters shall be made inaccessible to unqualified persons unless the surge arresters are listed for installation in accessible locations.

N 4.19.3.5 Where used at a point on a circuit, a surge arrester shall be connected to each ungrounded conductor.

N 4.19.3.5.1 A single installation of surge arresters shall be permitted to protect a number of interconnected circuits if no circuit is exposed to surges while disconnected from the surge arresters.

N 4.19.3.6 The conductor used to connect a surge arrester to a line, bus, or equipment and to an equipment grounding conductor or grounding electrode connection point shall not be any longer than necessary and shall have no unnecessary bends.

N 4.19.3.7 The conductor between the surge arrester and the line and the surge arrester and the grounding connection shall be not smaller than 6 AWG copper or aluminum, or it shall

Table 4.19.2.7 Maximum Allowed Voltage Protection Rating per Mode of Protection Provided for Different Power Distribution Systems to Which the SPD Can Be Connected

Power Distribution System	Line-to-Neutral	Line-to-Ground	Neutral-to-Ground	Line-to-Line
120 2W + ground	700	700	700	—
240 2W + ground	1000	1000	1000	—
120/240 3W + ground	700	700	700	1200
120/208 WYE 4W + ground	700	700	700	1200
277/480 WYE 4W + ground	1200	1200	1200	1800
277/480 WYE 4W + HRG (high-resistance ground)	1200	1800	1200	1800
347/600 WYE 4W + ground	1800	1800	1800	4000
240 DELTA 3W + ground (corner grounded)	—	1000	—	1000
240 DELTA 3W (ungrounded)	—	1000	—	1000
480 DELTA 3W + ground (corner grounded)	—	1800	—	1800
480 DELTA 3W (ungrounded)	—	1800	—	1800

utilize a conductive material that has a capacity and withstand rating equivalent to at least a 6 AWG conductor.

N 4.19.3.8 A surge arrester protecting a transformer that supplies a secondary distribution system shall be interconnected in accordance with Part III of Article 242 of *NFPA 70 (NEC)*.

N 4.19.4 Surge Protector Requirements.

N 4.19.4.1* Surge protectors shall be installed on all signal, data, and communications systems that enter or exit a building or structure or supply equipment, including proprietary equipment from communication utility providers or tenant communication utilities.

4.19.4.1.1 Surge protectors shall not be required if a service provider has made other provisions for lightning surge threats.

N 4.19.4.2* Surge protectors shall be installed where signal, data, or communications system conductors or cables enter or exit a building or structure to supply another building or structure and where the conductors or cables are run over 100 ft (30 m).

4.19.4.3* Surge protectors shall have a maximum discharge current (I_{max}) rating of at least 10 kA 8/20 μ s when installed at the entrance.

Δ 4.19.4.4 The selection of surge protectors shall take into consideration aspects such as frequency, bandwidth, and voltage.

4.19.4.4.1 Losses (such as returns loss, insertion loss, impedance mismatch, or other attenuation) introduced by the surge protector shall be within acceptable operational limits.

N 4.19.4.5* Surge protectors shall be grounded.

N 4.19.4.5.1 Surge protectors that perform their protection function through isolation shall not be required to be grounded.

Δ 4.19.4.5.2* Surge protectors that do not perform their surge protection function through isolation shall be grounded in accordance with Chapter 8 of *NFPA 70*.

Δ 4.19.4.6 Where the point of grounding referenced in 4.19.4.5 is more than 20 ft (6 m) away, a supplementary ground reference point shall be installed at the surge protector location.

N 4.19.4.6.1 Supplementary ground reference points shall be permitted as follows:

- (1) Equipotential ground bus bar
- (2) Structural metal framework in accordance with 4.18.1
- (3) Ground reference at a secondary power distribution panel

4.19.4.7 Surge protectors shall not be grounded through a down conductor of the lightning protection system.

4.19.4.8* Surge protectors shall be located and installed so as to minimize lead length, and interconnecting leads shall be routed so as to avoid sharp bends, coils, or kinks.

4.19.4.9 The surge protector grounding conductor, if provided, shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

4.19.4.10* Surge protectors shall be accessible for inspection and maintenance.

4.19.5 Communications Surge Protection.

4.19.5.1 SPDs shall be provided for all communications systems (including, but not limited to, CATV, alarm, and data systems) and antenna systems at facility entrances.

4.19.5.2 SPDs protecting communications systems shall be grounded, with the exception of devices that perform their surge protection function through isolation.

4.19.5.2.1* SPDs for data and signal line protection shall provide common mode protection, with the exception of devices that perform their surge protection function through isolation.

4.19.5.3 Utility-Owned Communication Equipment.

Δ 4.19.5.3.1 SPDs shall be provided on all proprietary equipment by communication utility providers or tenant communication utilities.

4.19.6 Installation.

4.19.6.1 Installation of surge suppression hardware shall conform to the requirements of *NFPA 70*.

Chapter 5 Protection for Miscellaneous Structures and Special Occupancies

5.1 General. All requirements of Chapter 4 shall apply except as modified by this chapter.

5.2 Masts, Spires, Flagpoles.

5.2.1 These slender structures shall require one strike termination device, down conductor, and grounding electrode.

5.2.2 Electrically continuous metal structures shall require only bonding to a grounding electrode or electrodes.

5.3 Facilities That Handle or Process Combustible or Explosive Dust.

5.3.1 Provisions shall be made for grain elevators and other food processing facilities to prevent ignition of combustible dust in accordance with this standard and *NFPA 61*.

5.3.2 Provisions shall be made for coal and coke processing facilities to prevent ignition of combustible dust in accordance with this standard and *NFPA 122*.

5.3.3 Provisions shall be made for the settling and rising of wood frame elevators as grain, coal, and coke are loaded and unloaded.

5.3.4 Provisions shall be made for wood working facilities to prevent ignition of combustible dust in accordance with this standard and *NFPA 664*.

5.4 Metal Towers and Tanks. Metal towers and tanks constructed so as to receive a stroke of lightning without damage shall require only bonding to grounding electrodes as required in Chapter 4, except as provided in Chapter 7.

5.5 Air-Inflated Structures. Air-inflated structures shall be protected with strike termination devices mounted directly on the structure, with a mast-type or a catenary lightning protection system in accordance with Chapter 4.

5.6 Concrete Tanks and Silos. Lightning protection systems for concrete (including prestressed concrete) tanks containing

flammable vapors, flammable gases, and liquids that produce flammable vapors and for concrete silos containing materials susceptible to dust explosions shall be provided with either external conductors or with conductors embedded in the concrete in accordance with Chapter 4 or Chapter 7.

5.7 Guyed Structures. Each metal guy cable shall be bonded at its lower end with a main-size conductor to all other guy cables sharing a common anchor point, and grounded at the anchor point.

5.7.1 Anchor plates shall be bonded to the anchor ground point.

5.7.2 Multiple guy cables shall be permitted to be connected to a common point with a single continuous conductor to the ground and the anchor plate bonding conductor attached to that main conductor.

5.7.3 Each metal guy cable shall be bonded at its upper end to the structure it supports if it is constructed of a conductive material, and to the lightning protection system loop conductor or down conductors.

5.8 Rooftop Helipads. Rooftop helipads on a protected structure shall be protected in accordance with Chapter 4 except as permitted by 5.8.1 through 5.8.7.

5.8.1* The metal frame of the structure or the metal frame of the safety net at the perimeter of the pad shall be permitted to serve as a strike termination device.

5.8.2 If adjacent sections of the perimeter metal frame or metal frame of the safety net are not electrically continuous through their mounting system, they shall be connected together with a main-size conductor.

5.8.3 Where lights are installed at the perimeter of the pad and extend above the edge of the helipad, air terminals shall be installed adjacent to the fixture.

5.8.4 The structural metal frame of the helipad shall be connected to the lightning protection system at a minimum of two places in accordance with 4.18.3.

5.8.4.1 Connections shall be installed at intervals not to exceed an average of 100 ft (30 m) around the perimeter of the pad, as widely spaced as practicable.

5.8.4.2 Clamps and conductors shall be installed at or below the elevation of the safety net frame.

5.8.4.3 Clamps and conductors shall be secured against vibration and rotor wash.

5.8.5 All exposed components shall be nonreflective or treated with a nonreflective finish.

5.8.6* Helipads used for parking shall have a designated point to connect the helicopter to the lightning protection system while parked.

5.8.7 All components of the lightning protection and grounding systems shall be located so as not to interfere with helicopter operations.

5.9 Fabric Structures.

5.9.1 Fabric structures shall be protected in accordance with Chapter 4.

5.9.2 If a fabric structure has a metal frame, the metal frame shall be bonded to the lightning protection system.

5.9.3 If the structural metal framing is at least $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) thick, the framing shall be permitted to be used as main-size conductors.

5.9.4 Grounding systems shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 4 and in accordance with 5.9.4.1 or 5.9.4.2 to mitigate the threat of step potential.

5.9.4.1 All of the following shall be satisfied:

- (1) Fabric structures that have a fabric or earth floor shall have a ground loop conductor.
- (2) Fabric structures that have electrically continuous metal framing around the perimeter of the structure shall be permitted to be used as the ground loop conductor if it is at least $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) thick.
- (3) Fabric structures that have a fabric or earth floor shall have a minimum of two radial grounding electrodes installed at opposing corners.
- (4) Fabric structures that have a fabric or earth floor shall have one radial electrode for every 60 ft (18 m) of protected perimeter, or portion thereof, in accordance with 4.18.4.1.

5.9.4.2* A ground grid shall be installed under fabric structures with an earth or fabric floor.

5.9.4.3 Isolation techniques such as insulative floors, insulative mats, or other technologies to reduce the threat of step potential shall be permitted.

Chapter 6 Protection for Heavy-Duty Stacks

6.1 General. A smoke or vent stack as shown in Figure 6.1 shall be classified as heavy duty if the cross-sectional area of the flue is greater than 500 in.² (0.3 m²) and the height is greater than 75 ft (23 m) above grade level.

6.2 Materials.

6.2.1 General. Materials shall be Class II as shown in Table 4.1.1.1.2 and as described in this chapter.

6.2.2 Corrosion Protection. Copper and bronze materials used on the upper 25 ft (7.6 m) of a stack shall have a continuous covering of lead having a minimum thickness of 0.064 in. (1.63 mm) to resist corrosion by flue gases.

6.2.2.1 Such materials shall include conductors, strike termination devices, connectors, splicers, and cable holders.

6.2.2.2 Stacks that extend through a roof less than 25 ft (7.6 m) shall have a lead covering only on those materials above the roof level.

6.3 Strike Termination Devices. Strike termination devices shall be made of solid copper, stainless steel, titanium, or Monel® metal.

6.3.1 They shall be located uniformly around the top of cylindrical stacks at intervals not exceeding 8 ft (2.4 m).

6.3.2 On square or rectangular stacks, strike termination devices shall be located not more than 24 in. (600 mm) from the corners and shall be spaced not more than 8 ft (2.4 m) apart around the perimeter.

A: 8 ft (2.4 m) maximum spacing of air terminals

B: All lightning protection materials on upper 25 ft (7.6 m) of stack to be lead-covered copper, stainless steel, or approved corrosion-resistant material

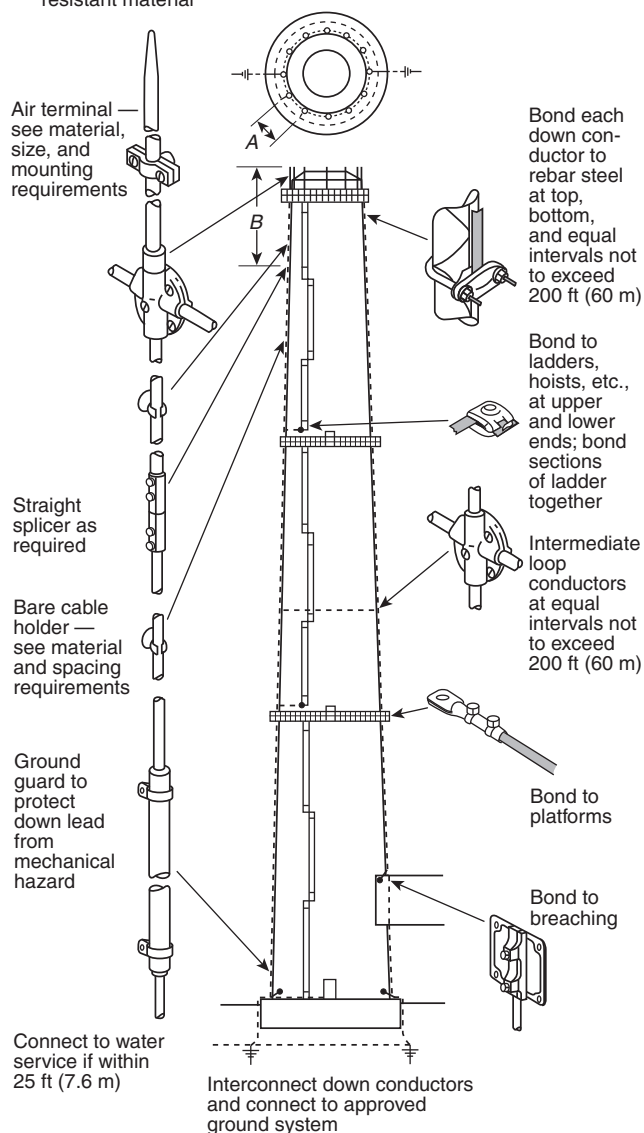


FIGURE 6.1 Heavy-Duty Stack.

6.3.3 Air Terminal Heights. The height of air terminals above the stacks shall be not less than 18 in. (450 mm) or more than 30 in. (760 mm).

6.3.3.1 Strike termination devices shall be at least $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (15 mm) in diameter, exclusive of the corrosion protection.

6.3.3.2 Top-mounted air terminals shall not extend more than 18 in. (450 mm) above the top of the stack.

6.3.4 Air Terminal Mountings.

6.3.4.1 Air terminals shall be secured to the stack and shall be connected together at their lower end with a conductor forming a closed loop around the stack.

6.3.4.2 Side-mounted air terminals shall be secured to the stack at not less than two locations.

6.3.4.3 An anchored base connector shall be considered as one location.

6.3.5 Steel Hoods.

6.3.5.1 An electrically continuous steel hood covering the stack lining and column, having a metal thickness of not less than $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm), shall be permitted to serve as the strike termination device.

6.3.5.2 The hood shall be permitted to serve as a top loop conductor when connected to each down conductor using a connection plate with an area of not less than 8 in.² (5200 mm²) bolted or welded to the hood.

6.4 Conductors.

6.4.1 General.

6.4.1.1 Conductors shall be copper, weighing not less than 375 lb per 1000 ft (558 g per m) without the lead coating, or approved corrosion-resistant material or coating.

6.4.1.2 The size of any wire in the conductor shall be not less than 15 AWG.

6.4.2 Down Conductors.

6.4.2.1 No fewer than two down conductors shall be provided.

6.4.2.2 Down conductors shall be as equally spaced as practicable around the stack.

6.4.2.3 Down conductors shall lead from the loop conductor at the top to grounding electrodes.

6.4.2.4 Down conductors shall be interconnected within 12 ft (3.6 m) of the base by a loop conductor, preferably below grade.

6.4.2.5 The down conductor also shall be interconnected with a loop conductor at intervals not exceeding 200 ft (60 m).

6.4.2.6 Down conductors shall be protected from physical damage or displacement for a distance of not less than 8 ft (2.4 m) above grade.

6.5 Fasteners.

6.5.1 Fasteners shall be of copper, bronze, or stainless steel.

6.5.2 Fasteners shall be anchored to the stack by masonry anchors or lay-in attachments.

6.5.3 The threaded shank of fasteners shall be not less than $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (12.7 mm) diameter for air terminals and $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) diameter for conductors.

6.5.4 Vertical conductors shall be fastened at intervals not exceeding 4 ft (1.2 m).

6.5.5 Horizontal conductors shall be fastened at intervals not exceeding 24 in. (600 mm).

6.6 Splices.

6.6.1 Splices in conductors shall be as few as practicable.

6.6.2 Splices in conductors shall be attached so as to withstand a pull test of 200 lb (890 N).

6.6.3 All connections and splices shall be by bolting, brazing, welding, or high-compression connectors listed for the purpose.

6.6.4 All connectors and splicers shall make contact with the conductor for a distance not less than 1½ in. (38 mm), measured parallel to the axis of the conductor.

6.7 Reinforced Concrete Stacks.

6.7.1 All reinforcing steel shall be made electrically continuous and bonded to each down conductor within 12 ft (3.6 m) of the top and base of the stack and at intervals not to exceed 200 ft (60 m).

6.7.2 Tying or clipping of reinforcing steel shall be a permitted means of ensuring continuity.

6.7.3 Clamps, welding, or other listed connectors shall be used for all connections to the reinforcing steel and to the down conductors.

6.8 Bonding of Metal Bodies. Bonding of metal bodies on a heavy-duty stack shall comply with the requirements of Sections 4.14 and 4.15 and as described in this section.

6.8.1 Potential Equalization. Potential equalization shall be accomplished by 6.8.1.1 through 6.8.1.3.

6.8.1.1 Ground Level of Stack.

6.8.1.1.1 All interior and exterior grounded media shall be interconnected by a loop conductor within 12 ft (3.6 m) of the base of the stack.

6.8.1.1.2 This interconnection shall include, but not be limited to, lightning protection down conductors, conduit, piping, elevators, ladders, and breeching steel and reinforcing steel.

6.8.1.2 Top Level of Stack. All interior and exterior grounded media shall be interconnected within 12 ft (3.6 m) of the top of the stack.

6.8.1.3 Intermediate Levels of Stack. All interior and exterior vertical grounded media shall be interconnected at intervals not to exceed 200 ft (60 m).

6.8.2 Protruding Metal Bodies. Protruding metal bodies shall be bonded in accordance with 6.8.2.1 through 6.8.2.2.

6.8.2.1 Exterior.

6.8.2.1.1 Protruding metal bodies 150 ft (45 m) or more above the base and on the exterior of a stack are subject to a direct strike and shall be interconnected to the lightning protection system.

6.8.2.1.2 Protruding metal bodies shall include, but not be limited to, rest platforms, jib hoists, and other metal bodies protruding 18 in. (450 mm) or more from the column wall.

6.8.2.2 Interior. Metal bodies on the interior of a reinforced steel stack or within the zone of protection on the exterior shall not be required to be connected to the lightning protection system.

6.9* Grounding.

6.9.1 A grounding electrode suitable for the soil conditions encountered shall be provided for each down conductor.

6.9.2 Grounding electrodes shall be in accordance with Section 4.12, except ground rods shall be a copper-clad or stainless-steel rod having a diameter of not less than ⅝ in. (15 mm) and shall be at least 10 ft (3 m) in length.

6.10 Metal Stacks.

6.10.1 Heavy-duty metal stacks having a metal thickness of ⅜ in. (4.8 mm) or greater shall not require air terminals or down conductors.

6.10.2 The metal stacks of 6.10.1 shall be grounded by at least two grounding electrodes as equally spaced as practicable around the stack.

6.10.3 If the stack is an adjunct of a building or located within the sideflash distance, as determined by Sections 4.14 and 4.15, it shall be interconnected to the lightning protection system on the building.

6.10.4 If the stack is located within the perimeter of a protected building, two connections shall be made between the stack conductors and the nearest main building lightning conductors at or about the roof level.

6.11 Metal Guy Wires and Cables. Metal guy wires and cables used to support stacks shall be grounded at their lower ends.

Chapter 7 Protection for Structures Containing Flammable Vapors, Flammable Gases, or Liquids That Can Give Off Flammable Vapors

7.1* Applicability.

7.1.1* This chapter shall apply to the protection of structures containing flammable vapors, flammable gases, or liquids that give off flammable vapors.

7.1.2 This chapter shall not apply to the protection of nonmetallic tanks containing flammable vapors, flammable gases, or liquids that give off flammable vapors. (See Annex N.)

7.1.3* The retroactivity requirements of Section 1.4 shall be permitted to apply to the requirements of this chapter.

Δ 7.2 Principles of Protection. Protection of structures containing flammable vapors, flammable gases, or liquids that give off flammable vapors and their contents from lightning damage shall comply with 7.2.1 through 7.2.3.

7.2.1* Minimization of Exposure to Hazardous (Classified) Locations.

7.2.1.1 A primary means to reduce the ignition of flammable vapors shall be to minimize the presence of those vapors in locations that are vulnerable to a source of ignition, such as heating, arcing, or corona discharge caused by one or more of the following:

- (1) Direct strike
- (2) Upward streamer
- (3) Lightning electromagnetic pulse (LEMP)
- (4) Secondary arcing

7.2.1.2* Flammable air-vapor mixtures shall be prevented, to the greatest extent possible, from accumulating in areas where a source of ignition is likely to be present.

7.2.1.3 Openings where flammable concentrations of vapor or gas escape to the atmosphere shall be closed or otherwise protected against the entrance of flame.

7.2.1.4 Structures and all appurtenances (e.g., gauge hatches, vent valves, and floating roof seals) shall be maintained in operating condition.

7.2.2* Inherent Protection. Metallic structures that are electrically continuous; tightly sealed to prevent the escape of liquids, vapors, or gases; and of $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) thickness or greater to withstand direct strikes shall be considered inherently self-protected.

7.2.3 Lightning Protection System. Structures not meeting the requirements of 7.2.2 shall be provided with protection in accordance with the requirements of Section 7.3 except as modified for specific types of structures (see Section 7.4).

7.3 Protective Measures.

7.3.1 Materials and Installation. Conductors, strike termination devices, surge protection devices, and grounding connections shall be selected and installed in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 4 except as modified in this chapter.

7.3.2 Zone of Protection. The zone of protection for structures containing flammable vapors, flammable gases, or liquids that can give off flammable vapors shall be based on a striking distance of 100 ft (30 m) or less.

7.3.3 Strike Termination Devices.

7.3.3.1 Strike termination devices shall be in accordance with Section 4.5.

7.3.3.2* The placement of strike termination devices shall take into consideration the possibility of sparks or damaging impacts occurring at the attachment point.

7.3.4 Down Conductors.

7.3.4.1 Down conductors shall be installed in accordance with 4.8.9 except as modified in this chapter.

7.3.4.2 Down conductors shall be installed external to the hazardous (classified) location where practicable.

7.3.4.3* Where it is not practicable to install down conductors external to the hazardous location, it shall be ensured that the autoignition temperature of the gas or vapor causing the hazardous environment is not exceeded.

7.3.5 Bonding. The potential equalization system design and minimum installation requirements of Section 4.13 through Section 4.15 shall be exceeded as required to ensure there are no melting or spraying effects except at the lightning attachment point.

7.3.6 Surge Protection.

7.3.6.1 Surge protection shall be provided for equipment and services in accordance with the requirements of Section 4.19 and NFPA 70.

7.3.6.2 Surge protective devices shall be installed outside hazardous (classified) locations where practicable.

7.3.6.3* Surge protection installed inside a hazardous (classified) location shall be within enclosures identified for the Class and Division of the specific location.

7.3.7* Grounding.

7.3.7.1 Except as specified in 7.3.7.2 and 7.3.7.3, a ground ring electrode or ground loop conductor supplemented by one or more grounding electrodes, as identified in 4.12.2 through 4.12.7, shall be provided for structures containing flammable vapors, flammable gases, or liquids that can give off flammable vapors.

7.3.7.2 A ground ring electrode or ground loop conductor shall not be required for structures with a perimeter projection of 200 ft (60 m) total or less.

7.3.7.3 A metal tank shall be grounded using one or more of the following methods:

- (1)* The tank shall be connected without insulated joints to a grounded metallic piping system.
- (2) The vertical cylindrical tank shall rest on the earth or concrete and shall be at least 20 ft (6 m) in diameter, or it shall rest on bituminous pavement and be at least 50 ft (15 m) in diameter.
- (3) The tank shall be grounded through a minimum of two grounding electrodes, as described in Section 4.12, at a maximum of 100 ft (30 m) intervals along the perimeter of the tank.

7.3.7.4 Where a tank is installed over an insulating membrane for environmental or other reasons, it shall be grounded as described in 7.3.7.3(1) or 7.3.7.3(3).

7.4 Operating Facilities (Non-Storage Applications).

7.4.1* Structures containing hazardous (classified) locations used for non-storage applications shall comply with the requirements of Section 7.3 unless justified by a lightning risk assessment.

7.5 Storage Tanks Under Pressure.

7.5.1 Sealed metallic tanks, vessels, and process equipment that contain flammable or combustible liquids or flammable gases under pressure are considered to be inherently self-protecting provided the vessel is grounded — either inherently or by external means — and the walls of the vessel are greater than $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) thick to prevent puncture by a direct strike in accordance with 7.2.2.

7.5.2 The exposure of any valves or other appurtenances to a direct strike or secondary arcing shall be considered in the determination of the need for protection.

7.6 Aboveground Tanks at Atmospheric Pressure.

7.6.1* Fixed Roof Tanks (Metallic) and Tanks with Internal Floating Roofs. Sliding or fixed contact conductors shall not be required for lightning protection for fixed roof and internal floating roof tanks.

7.6.2 External Floating Roof Tanks.

7.6.2.1* Sliding Contacts. Sliding contacts shall consist of either metallic primary shoe seals or shunts.

7.6.2.1.1 Metallic primary shoe seals shall be electrically bonded to the floating roof either inherently — through design and construction — or by a minimum of one Class I lightning protection conductor or an equivalent at each end of each shoe.

7.6.2.1.2* If nonconductive primary seals are installed, shunts shall be installed as follows:

- (1) The shunts shall consist of a flexible stainless-steel conductor of at least 0.031 in.² (20 mm²) cross-sectional area or of other material conductors of equivalent current-carrying capacity and corrosion resistance.
- (2) The minimum width of each shunt shall be 2 in. (50 mm).

- (3) The shunts shall be spaced at intervals no greater than 10 ft (3 m) around the perimeter of the floating roof.
- (4) The shunt shall have as short and direct a path as possible from the conductive floating roof to the tank shell.
- (5) The shunts shall be of the minimum length necessary to permit the function of the floating roof assembly.
- (6) The shunts shall be of the minimum length necessary to remain in contact with the shell during the full horizontal and vertical design movement of the floating roof.
- (7)* The shunts and terminations shall be of sufficient flexibility, cross-sectional area, and corrosion resistance to maximize service life.
- (8) The planned operation of the tank shall determine the placement of the shunts as follows:
 - (a) For ordinary operations, the shunt-to-shell contact point shall be submerged at least 12 in. (300 mm) below the surface of the liquid product.
 - (b) For tanks that are routinely run drain-dry, the shunts shall be placed above the tank roof deck.
- (9) Above-deck shunts shall be removed when retrofitting existing tanks with submerged shunts.

7.6.2.2* Fixed Contacts.

7.6.2.2.1 The tank's floating roof shall be bonded to the tank shell by a direct electrical connection using a bypass conductor with a minimum cross-sectional area equivalent to that of a main-size conductor.

7.6.2.2.2 Each conductor, including the connectors, shall have a maximum end-to-end electrical resistance of 0.03 ohm.

7.6.2.2.3 The bypass conductor shall be of the minimum length necessary to permit full movement of the floating roof.

7.6.2.2.4 Bypass conductors shall be installed as follows:

- (1) A minimum of two bypass conductors shall be installed.
- (2) Bypass conductors shall be installed for every 100 ft (30 m) of the tank perimeter or portion thereof.
- (3) Conductors shall be evenly spaced around the tank circumference.

7.6.2.2.5 Where there is a rolling ladder, one of the required bypass conductors shall be installed along and bonded to the rolling ladder.

7.6.2.2.6 The bypass conductor bonded to the rolling ladder shall be a continuous conductor bonded at one end to the floating roof and at the other end to the tank shell.

7.6.2.2.7* The bypass conductors and terminations shall be positioned and of sufficient flexibility, cross-sectional area, and corrosion resistance to maximize service life.

7.6.2.3 Parallel Conducting Paths (Seal Assembly from the Floating Roof Tank).

7.6.2.3.1 Any conductive seal assembly components — including springs, scissor assemblies, and seal membranes — that are not fully submerged shall be electrically insulated from the tank roof or bonded to the roof with one of the following:

- (1) A bonding conductor
- (2) A flexible stainless-steel conductor of at least 0.031 in.² (20 mm²) cross-sectional area
- (3) A conductor of another material of equivalent current-carrying capacity and corrosion resistance to the flexible stainless-steel conductor

7.6.2.3.2 If insulated, the insulation level shall be rated at 1 kV or greater.

7.6.2.4 Insulation of Gauge or Guide Poles.

7.6.2.4.1 Any gauge or guide pole components, telescoping legs, or assemblies that penetrate the tank's floating roof shall be electrically insulated from the roof or bonded to the roof with one of the following:

- (1) A bonding conductor
- (2) A flexible stainless-steel conductor of at least 0.031 in.² (20 mm²) cross-sectional area
- (3) A conductor of another material of equivalent current-carrying capacity and corrosion resistance to the flexible stainless-steel conductor

7.6.2.4.2 If insulated, the insulation level shall be rated at 1 kV or greater.

Δ 7.6.3 Metallic Tanks with Nonmetallic Roofs. Metallic tanks with wooden or other types of nonmetallic roofs shall not be considered self-protecting, even if the roof is essentially gastight and sheathed with thin metal and all the gas openings are provided with flame protection.

7.6.3.1 Such tanks shall be provided with strike termination devices.

7.6.3.2 Such strike termination devices shall be bonded to each other, to the metallic sheathing, if any, and to the tank shell.

7.6.3.3 Metal bodies shall be bonded as required by Section 4.15.

7.7 Earthen Containers at Atmospheric Pressure Containing Flammable Vapors or Liquids That Give Off Flammable Vapors.

7.7.1 Lined or unlined earthen containers with combustible roofs that enclose flammable vapors or liquids that can give off flammable vapors shall be protected by air terminals, separate masts, overhead ground wires, or a combination of these devices.

N 7.8* Tank Batteries.

N 7.8.1 Protection of tank batteries shall include the protection of associated equipment.

N 7.8.2 Strike termination methods shall be provided in accordance with 7.3.3 and 7.6.3.2.

N 7.8.3* Site appurtenances — such as flare stacks, separators, and heater treaters — outside of a zone of protection shall be protected.

N 7.8.4 Ground-level potential equalization shall be established within the tank battery through interconnection of metallic components, underground piping, and grounding systems.

N 7.8.5* In locations where direct strikes or arcing is likely to occur, engineering methods shall be used to minimize the accumulation of flammable vapors in areas where a source of ignition is likely to be present.

N 7.8.6 Surge protection shall comply with 7.3.6.

Chapter 8 Protection of Structures Housing Explosive Materials

8.1* Application. This chapter shall provide the minimum requirements for lightning protection of structures housing explosive materials.

8.1.1 The provisions of this chapter shall not be required for structures housing Hazard Division 1.4 materials, for structures housing explosives of net explosives weight (NEW) of 25 lb (11.3 kg) or less, or where exclusion is justified by a risk assessment.

8.1.2 This chapter shall not apply to structures where the protection conflicts with airfield or flightline operations, as determined by the AHJ.

8.1.3 For those locations where no strike terminations are installed, bonding, grounding, and SPDs shall be installed as described in Sections 4.19, 8.5, and 8.7.

8.1.4 Lightning protection shall be installed as specified in Chapter 4, except as modified by this chapter.

8.2 General.

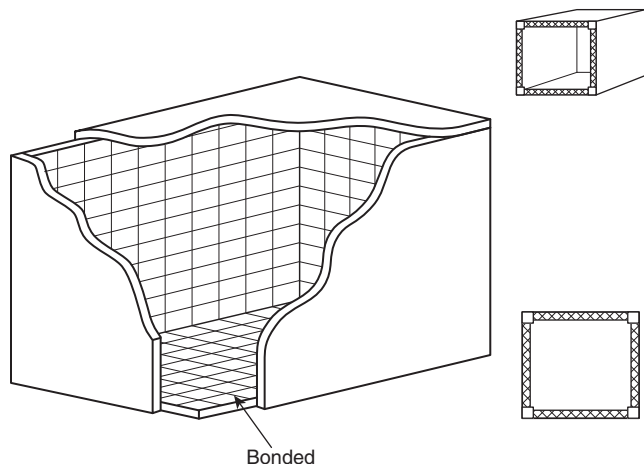
8.2.1 Striking Distance. Lightning protection systems designed to protect structures housing explosives shall be based on a striking distance of 100 ft (30 m), as discussed in 4.7.3.1.1.

8.2.2 Electromagnetic Coupling. Where the effects of electromagnetic coupling are of concern, a mast or overhead wire (catenary) system shall be installed.

8.3 Types of Lightning Protection.

8.3.1 General. Except as excluded by 8.1.3, structures containing explosives shall have lightning protection consisting of one or more of the types given in 8.3.2 through 8.3.5.

8.3.2* Metallic (Faraday-Like) Cage. Where optimum protection for structures housing explosives is required (as determined by the AHJ), a grounded, continuously conductive enclosure, as shown in Figure 8.3.2, shall be used.



Note: Required grounding not shown.

FIGURE 8.3.2 Metallic (Faraday-Like) Cage.

8.3.3* Single or Multiple Masts. Mast-type systems shall be designed as specified in 4.5.3 and 4.5.5, using a striking distance as specified in 8.2.1.

8.3.3.1 Nonmetallic masts shall have a strike termination device or metal cap with a minimum thickness of $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) connected to ground by at least one down conductor.

8.3.3.2* Mast guy wires shall not be used as the only down conductors for a mast.

8.3.3.3 Each metallic guy cable shall be interconnected at its lower end to the grounding electrode(s) for the down conductor.

8.3.3.4 Metallic guy wires shall be provided with a main-size conductor to establish electrical continuity with metallic masts or the down conductor system for nonmetallic masts at the top of the guy.

8.3.3.5* Grounding of Masts.

8.3.3.5.1 Grounding of masts shall comply with the requirements of Section 4.12.

8.3.3.5.2 Metallic masts shall be grounded as shown in Figure 8.3.3.5.2.

8.3.4 Overhead Wire (Catenary) Systems. Catenary systems shall be designed as specified in 4.5.4, using a striking distance as specified in 8.2.1.

8.3.5* Integral Lightning Protection Systems. Strike termination devices directly attached to the structure shall be installed as specified in Chapter 4, except as modified to meet the zone of protection requirements using a striking distance of 100 ft (30 m) as specified in 8.2.1.

8.4 Grounding.

8.4.1 General. A ground ring electrode shall be required for all lightning protection systems on structures containing explosives, interconnecting all down conductors, structural steel, ground rods, and other grounding systems.

8.4.1.1 A ground ring electrode shall not be required for structures with areas of 500 ft² (46.5 m²) or less or those that can be protected by a single mast or air terminal.

8.4.1.2 A ground ring electrode shall not be required for portable structures meeting the provisions of 8.7.4.

8.4.2* Grounding Electrodes.

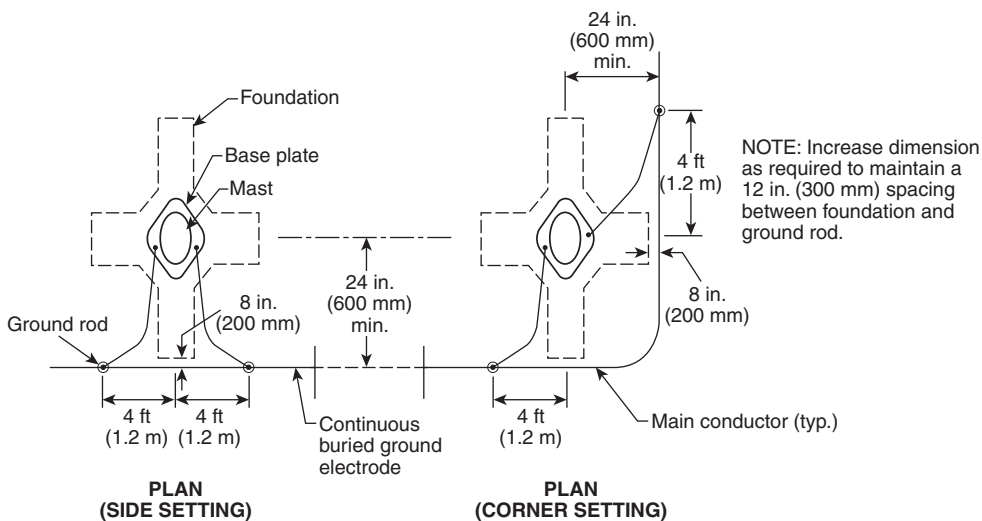
8.4.2.1 Grounding electrodes, as defined in Section 4.12, used in lightning protection systems for explosives facilities shall be selected from the following:

- (1) Ground ring electrodes
- (2) Ground rods
- (3) Radials
- (4) Ground plate electrodes
- (5) Concrete-encased electrodes

8.4.2.2 Ground ring electrodes shall be augmented with a minimum of two ground rods.

8.4.2.3 Ground ring electrodes shall be installed no less than 3 ft (1 m) from the structure foundation or footing.

8.4.2.4* Ground ring electrodes shall be bare copper conductors meeting or exceeding 105,000 circular mils.



▲ FIGURE 8.3.3.5.2 Connection of Metallic Masts to Ground Ring Electrode.

■ 8.4.2.5* Concrete-encased electrodes shall be designed, installed, and verified as specified in 4.12.3 prior to being placed into service.

•

8.4.3 Earth Enhancement. Chemical grounds installed for the specific purpose of providing electrical contact with the earth or a conductor immersed in nearby salt water shall be permitted.

8.5 Bonding.

8.5.1 General. Bonding requirements for the protection of structures housing explosive materials shall comply with Sections 4.13, 4.14, and 4.15.

8.5.2 Sideflash Distance. Sideflash distances shall be calculated using the method in Section 4.15.

8.5.3 Metallic Masses. Any metallic masses within the sideflash distance shall be bonded to the lightning protection system.

8.5.3.1 Metallic masses shall not be required to be bonded if the mass has a surface area of less than 400 in.² (0.26 m²).

8.5.3.2 Metallic masses shall not be required to be bonded if the mass has a volume of less than 1000 in.³ (0.016 m³).

8.5.4* Direct Bonding Techniques. Direct bonding techniques shall include the following:

- (1) Welding
- (2) Brazing
- (3) Bolting
- (4) Riveting
- (5) High-compression crimping [10,000 lbs/in² (68,950 kPa)]

8.5.4.1 Soft soldering shall not be permitted.

8.5.4.2 Self-tapping screws shall not be used for bonding purposes.

8.5.4.3 After completion of the joining process, the bond region shall be sealed with appropriate protective agents to prevent bond deterioration through corrosion of the mating surfaces.

8.5.4.4 Bonding connections and conductor splices shall not be painted.

8.5.5 Access Doors.

8.5.5.1* All external metallic doorframes (and metallic doors through bonding to the frames) that permit access to the structure shall be bonded to the ground ring electrode.

8.5.5.2 Frames of external roll-up or slatted doors shall be bonded to the ground ring electrode.

8.5.6 Metallic Barricades or Bollards. Metallic barricades and bollards within the sideflash distance as calculated per Section 4.15 shall be bonded to the ground ring electrode using a buried conductor.

8.5.7* Railroad Tracks. All railroad tracks (including siding tracks) that are located within 6 ft (1.8 m) of a facility housing explosives shall be bonded to the lightning protection system ground ring electrode using a main-size conductor buried a minimum of 18 in. (450 mm) below grade (see Figure 8.5.7).

8.5.7.1 At the point where railroad tracks enter a facility, they shall be bonded to the frame of the structure or facility or the ground loop conductor.

8.5.7.2 Where railroad tracks are used for electrical signaling, insulating joints shall be provided to isolate railroad siding tracks from the main railroad track.

8.5.7.3 The insulating joints shall be located between any bond to the lightning protection system and connection to the main track.

8.6 Surge Protection. Surge protection as described in Section 4.19 shall be required for all power, signal, data, and communications conductors and cables entering or exiting a structure housing explosives.

8.6.1 Power and metallic communications lines (including intrusion detection lines) shall enter the facility in shielded cables or metallic conduit run underground for at least 50 ft (15 m) from the structure.

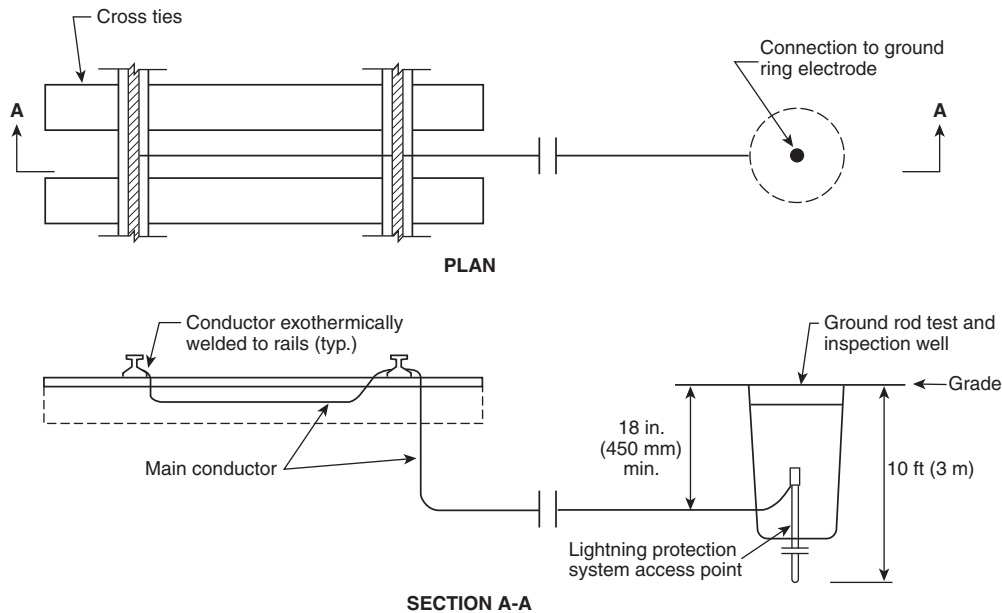


FIGURE 8.5.7 Grounding and Bonding of Railroad Tracks (Not to Scale).

8.6.2 Buried metallic conduits shall be bonded to the ground ring electrode where they cross.

8.6.3 Use of low-pass filters shall be permitted for added protection on critical electronic loads as determined by the AHJ.

8.7 Protection for Specific Facilities.

8.7.1 Earth-Covered Magazines. Lightning protection on earth-covered magazines shall be installed as specified in Chapter 4, except as modified below.

8.7.1.1* Strike termination devices shall be placed to protect the headwall, any ventilator, or other metal bodies as required in Sections 8.2 and 8.3.

8.7.1.2 Strike termination devices shall be permitted but are not required for portions of the magazine where a minimum earth cover of 24 in. (600 mm) is maintained.

8.7.1.3 The steel doors, door frames, and steel reinforcement shall be bonded to the grounding system.

8.7.1.4 Incoming power, data, and communications systems shall be protected by SPDs in accordance with Section 4.19.

8.7.2* Wharves and Piers for Explosives Operations. Lightning protection systems shall be required on these structures where explosive materials cannot be moved to a protected area at the approach of a thunderstorm.

8.7.2.1 The portion of these structures used for explosive material staging shall be provided with a mast or catenary system.

8.7.2.2 The mast or catenary system shall be interconnected with a deck-level potential equalization network.

8.7.2.3 The deck-level potential equalization network shall consist of interconnected cables or conductors running along these structures to provide interconnection of all permanently installed metal objects on the wharf.

8.7.2.4* The deck-level potential equalization network shall be provided with multiple paths to ground using main-size conductors or equivalent, spaced no greater than 100 ft (30 m) average intervals.

8.7.2.5 A grounding electrode shall be provided for each down conductor.

8.7.2.5.1 Approved grounding electrodes shall be ground rods as described in 4.12.2 or ground plate electrodes as described in 4.12.6.

8.7.2.5.2 The grounding electrodes shall be installed in the earth at the base of pilings.

8.7.2.5.3* Where it is not practicable to install the approved grounding electrodes in accordance with 8.7.2.5.2, it shall be permitted to create a grounding path by submerging the electrodes in water.

8.7.2.6 Cranes shall be bonded to the deck-level potential equalization network.

8.7.3 Open Storage Pads.

8.7.3.1 Open storage pads shall be provided with a mast or catenary system.

8.7.3.2 An additional buried ground loop conductor shall be installed where the following conditions exist:

- (1) Explosive materials are within sideflash distance of cables or masts.
- (2) Flammable gases or exposed flammable liquids are present on the pad.

8.7.4* Metal Portable Magazines. Portable magazines that provide equivalent protection of a metallic cage as described in 8.3.2 shall be grounded using a main conductor.

8.7.4.1 Metal portable magazines of the box type having $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) steel or equivalent where the walls, floor, and roof

are welded together shall require bonding of the doors across each hinge.

8.7.4.2 Incoming power, data, and communications systems shall be protected by SPDs in accordance with Section 4.19.

8.7.4.3 Single Portable Magazines.

8.7.4.3.1 Single portable magazines less than 25 ft² (2.3 m²) (using outside dimensions) shall require one ground rod.

8.7.4.3.2 Single portable magazines equal to or greater than 25 ft² (2.3 m²) shall be grounded by using a minimum of two separate ground rods, each placed in a different corner, preferably at opposing corners.

8.7.4.3.3 Connections to an existing ground ring electrode shall be permitted in lieu of ground rods.

8.7.4.4 Portable Magazine Groups.

8.7.4.4.1 Each group shall have a minimum of two connections to earth.

8.7.4.4.2 Groups exceeding 250 ft (76 m) in perimeter shall have a connection to earth for every 100 ft (30 m) of perimeter or fraction thereof, such that the average distance between all connections to earth does not exceed 100 ft (30 m).

8.7.4.4.3 For small groups requiring only two connections to earth, the connections shall be placed at opposite ends of the group and as far apart as is practicable.

8.7.4.4.4 Connections to existing ground ring electrodes shall be permitted in lieu of ground rods.

8.7.4.4.5 All ground connections shall provide impedance to earth that is as low as practicable.

8.8 Metallic Fences.

8.8.1 Grounding.

8.8.1.1 Fences shall be grounded where located within 6 ft (1.8 m) of a structure housing explosives by interconnection with the grounding system of the structure.

8.8.1.2 Fences meeting the criteria of 8.8.1.1 shall also be grounded within 100 ft (30 m) on both sides of where overhead power lines cross the fence.

8.8.1.3 Gate posts through which explosives material or personnel will pass shall be grounded in accordance with 8.8.3.

8.8.1.4 Metal single-strand fences with nonconductive posts requiring grounding in accordance with 8.8.1 shall use a main-size conductor extending the full height of the post.

8.8.1.5 The main-size conductor discussed in 8.8.1.4 shall be bonded to each single strand to form a continuous path to ground.

8.8.2 Bonding.

8.8.2.1 Fences shall be bonded across gates and other discontinuities in accordance with the requirements of 8.8.3.

8.8.2.2 Fencing mesh covered with nonconductive material shall be bonded to posts requiring grounding by 8.8.1.

8.8.3 Gates and Gate Posts.

8.8.3.1 All gate posts through which explosives material or personnel will pass shall be provided with a grounding elec-

trode meeting the requirements of Section 4.12 using a main-size conductor.

8.8.3.2 Class I main-size conductors buried not less than 18 in. (450 mm) in depth shall interconnect posts on opposite sides of a gate.

8.8.3.3 Gates shall be bonded to their grounded support posts using a flexible secondary-size jumper.

8.9* Maintenance and Inspection Plan. A maintenance and inspection plan shall be developed for all protection systems used to protect structures housing explosives.

8.10 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance. The initial installation shall be inspected by the AHJ and re-inspected and recertified following any work done on the structure.

8.10.1 Maintenance guidelines of the lightning protection system shall be provided at the completion of any lightning protection system installation.

8.10.2 Maintenance personnel shall ensure that repairs of all discrepancies found during inspections are made prior to resuming explosives operations.

8.10.3 Any indication of damage produced by a lightning strike to a structure or its lightning protection system shall be immediately documented and reported to the appropriate authority.

8.10.4 Where permitted by the AHJ, photographic records of damage suspected to have resulted from a lightning strike shall be obtained prior to repair.

8.10.5 To prevent personnel shock, maintenance, inspection, and testing shall not be conducted during the threat of a thunderstorm.

8.10.6 Lightning protection systems on explosives facilities shall be inspected visually at least at 7-month intervals for evidence of corrosion or broken wires or connections.

8.10.6.1 All necessary repairs shall be made immediately.

8.10.6.2 Any detected damage to the system shall be entered in the test records.

8.10.6.3* Surge protection installed in accordance with Section 4.19 shall be inspected at intervals not exceeding 7 months, when visual inspection is performed, and after any suspected lightning strike.

8.10.7* The lightning protection system shall be tested electrically at least every 14 months.

8.10.7.1 The dc resistance of any single object bonded to the lightning protection system shall not exceed 200 milliohms.

8.10.7.2 The test shall be conducted in accordance with the appropriate test equipment manufacturer's instructions.

8.10.7.3 The test shall be conducted by personnel familiar with lightning protection system testing.

8.10.7.4 Only those instruments designed specifically for earth resistance testing shall be permitted for use in this application.

8.10.7.5 Test instruments shall be properly maintained and calibrated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

8.10.7.6 The three-point fall-of-potential test method shall be used when measuring the resistance to earth of grounding systems for explosives facilities.

8.10.7.7 Records and test measurement data of resistance to earth and bonding tests shall be documented and shall be available for a time period acceptable to the AHJ.

8.10.7.8* Only qualified personnel having the necessary training and expertise shall be permitted to maintain, inspect, and test explosives facilities.

Chapter 9 Protection for Wind Turbines

9.1* General. The intent of this chapter shall be to provide lightning protection requirements for wind turbine structures that comprise externally rotating blades, a nacelle, and a supporting tower.

9.1.1 Lightning protection systems installed on wind turbines shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this chapter.

9.1.2* This chapter shall not include the lightning protection of the wind turbine blades or electrical generation equipment.

9.2 Fundamental Principles of Protection.

9.2.1 Placement of air terminations for the nacelle shall be determined as described in Section 4.7, assuming the blades are oriented so they provide the smallest zone of protection to the structure.

9.2.2 The nacelle, hub, and other structural components of the wind turbine shall be substituted for air terminals and conductors, where possible, in accordance with 4.5.1.4 and Section 4.18.

9.2.3 Lightning protection components for the protection of meteorological instruments and aircraft warning lights located on the nacelle shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 4.

9.2.4 The blade-to-hub transition conductor shall be sized in accordance with Table 4.1.1.1.2 for main conductors and provided with a minimum required allowance and flexibility for adequate motion of the blade.

9.2.5* The cover for the hub shall be protected with a strike termination device as required by Section 4.5.

9.2.6* The down conductor requirements from the nacelle to ground shall be provided by one or both of the following methods:

- (1) At least two down conductors shall be provided for the tower of the wind turbine in accordance with 4.8.9 and 4.8.10.
- (2) For tubular or structural metal towers, the requirements of Section 4.18 shall be met.

9.2.7 Metal bodies located outside or inside the wind turbine structure that contribute to lightning hazards because they are grounded or assist in providing a path to ground for lightning current shall be bonded to the overall lightning protection system in accordance with Sections 4.14 and 4.15.

9.3 Protection of Electrical and Mechanical Control Systems.

9.3.1 Because the nacelle, hub, tower, and base structure sections of the wind turbine typically house electrical and

mechanical control systems, consideration shall be given to the protection of these systems with bonding, shielding, and surge protection in accordance with the following:

- (1) Separation distance and bonding techniques maintained in accordance with Sections 4.14 and 4.15
- (2) Maximized distance between lightning conductors and electrical system components and electrical system cabling located on or near a ground plane
- (3) Electrical system cabling magnetically shielded by either braided wire sheath or wire mesh screen or bonding of metallic conduit, cable trays, or raceways
- (4) Electrical equipment that is exposed to lightning electromagnetic impulse (LEMP) located within metal enclosures
- (5) Large loop areas within electrical cabling avoided
- (6) **Surge protection** installed as close as practicable to the equipment to be protected

9.3.2 **Surge protection** shall be in accordance with Section 4.19.

9.4 Grounding. Each wind turbine structure shall be equipped with a common grounding system in accordance with Section 4.13 and shall interconnect to the site grounding system, if present.

9.4.1* The lightning protection grounding system shall be in accordance with 4.12.1 through 4.12.8.

9.4.2* The grounding system shall include a ground ring electrode external to the foundation, in contact with the soil, and bonded to the foundation reinforcing steel using **connectors and fittings** listed for the purpose.

9.4.3 Reinforcing steel shall be made electrically continuous throughout construction by interconnection of vertical and horizontal bars.

9.4.4 Down conductors coursed on or in reinforced concrete construction shall be connected to the reinforcing steel at their upper and lower extremities.

9.4.5 Other grounded media located adjacent to the base of the wind turbine shall be bonded to the grounding electrode system of the main structure in accordance with 4.13.6.1(4).

Chapter 10 Protection for Watercraft

10.1 General.

10.1.1 The intent of this chapter shall be to provide lightning protection requirements for watercraft while in water.

10.1.2* Lightning protection systems installed on watercraft shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this chapter.

10.2 Materials.

10.2.1 Corrosion.

10.2.1.1 The materials used in the lightning protection system shall be resistant to corrosion in a marine environment.

10.2.1.2 The use of combinations of metals that form detrimental galvanic couples shall be prohibited where they are likely to be in contact with water.

10.2.2 Permitted Materials.

10.2.2.1 Copper conductors shall be tinned.

10.2.2.2 All copper conductors shall be of the grade required for commercial electrical work and shall have at least 95 percent of the conductivity of pure copper.

10.2.2.3 The use of conducting materials other than copper, such as aluminum, stainless steel, and bronze, shall be permitted, provided they meet all requirements in this chapter.

10.2.2.4* Carbon fiber composite (CFC) shall not be used as a conductor in a lightning protection system.

10.3 Strike Termination.

10.3.1* Zone of Protection.

10.3.1.1 The zone of protection for watercraft shall be based on a striking distance of 100 ft (30 m).

10.3.1.2 The zone of protection afforded by any configuration of masts or other elevated conductive objects shall be determined graphically or mathematically, as shown in Figure 10.3.1.2. The distance can be determined analytically for a 100 ft (30 m) striking distance with the following equation (units shall be consistent, ft or m):

[10.3.1.2]

$$d = \sqrt{h_1(2R - h_1)} - \sqrt{h_2(2R - h_2)}$$

where:

d = horizontal protected distance

h_1 = height of strike termination device

R = rolling sphere radius [100 ft (30 m)]

h_2 = height of object to be protected

▲ 10.3.2 Strike Termination Devices.

10.3.2.1* Strike termination devices shall meet the requirements of Section 4.5 and Table 4.1.1.1.1 and shall be located so

as to provide a zone of protection that covers the entire watercraft.

10.3.2.2 The strike termination devices shall be mechanically strong to withstand the roll and pitching action of the hull, as well as heavy weather.

10.3.2.3 Metallic fittings such as masts, handrails, stanchions, bimini tops, outriggers, flybridges, and dinghy davits shall be permitted as strike termination devices, provided they meet the requirements of 10.3.2.1.

10.3.3 Nonmetallic Masts. A nonmetallic mast not within the zone of protection of a strike termination device shall be provided with at least one air terminal that meets the requirements of a strike termination device.

10.3.3.1 An air terminal shall extend a minimum of 10 in. (254 mm) above the mast.

10.3.3.2 The top of an air terminal shall be sufficiently high that all masthead fittings are below the surface of a 90-degree inverted cone with its apex at the top of the air terminal.

10.3.3.3 Multiple air terminals shall be permitted to give the required zone of protection comprising overlapping zones of protection as described in 10.3.3.2.

10.3.3.4 An air terminal shall be securely fastened to the mast and connected to a main conductor as described in 10.4.1.

10.4 Conductors.

10.4.1 Main Conductor.

10.4.1.1* A main conductor made of copper shall have a cross-sectional area of at least 0.033 in.² (21 mm²).

10.4.1.2 A main conductor made of aluminum shall have a cross-sectional area of at least 0.062 in.² (40 mm²).

10.4.1.3* A conducting fitting constructed of metal other than copper or aluminum that neither contains electrical wiring nor connects conductors containing electrical wiring shall be

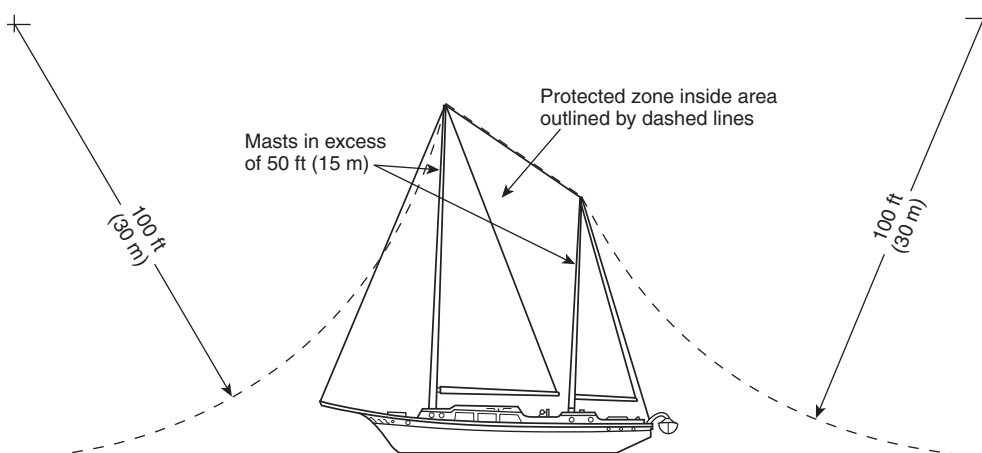


FIGURE 10.3.1.2 Diagram of a Boat with Masts in Excess of 50 ft (15 m) Above the Water. [Protection based on lightning strike distance of 100 ft (30 m).]

permitted to be used as a main conductor if it has at least the cross-sectional area given by one of the following formulas:

[10.4.1.3a]

$$A = 3.4 \times 10^2 \sqrt{\frac{\rho}{C_p D (MP - 77)}} \text{ in.}^2$$

where:

A = cross-sectional area (in.²)
 ρ = resistivity (Ω in.)
 C_p = specific heat capacity (Btu/lb_m °F)
 D = density (lb_m/in.³)
 MP = melting point (°F)

[10.4.1.3b]

$$A = 9.7 \times 10^9 \sqrt{\frac{\rho}{C_p D (MP - 298)}} \text{ mm}^2$$

where:

A = cross-sectional area (mm²)
 ρ = resistivity (Ω m)
 C_p = specific heat capacity (J/kg⁻¹ K⁻¹)
 D = density (kg/m³)
 MP = melting point (K)

10.4.1.4* A conducting fitting constructed of metal other than copper or aluminum that either contains electrical wiring or connects conductors containing electrical wiring shall be permitted to be used as a main conductor if it has the same or smaller dc resistance per unit length as a copper conductor with a cross-sectional area of 0.033 in.² (21 mm²).

10.4.1.5 Metallic fittings, including masts, handrails, toe rails, stanchions, through bolts, bimini tops, outriggers, flybridges, and dinghy davits, shall be permitted to be used as main conductors, provided they meet the requirements of 10.4.1.

10.4.1.6* Each main conductor shall be routed either directly to a grounding electrode, described in Section 10.5, or outboard of crewed areas, wiring, and electronics.

10.4.1.7* No main conductor that is substantially vertical shall pass within 6 in. (150 mm) of the unheeled waterline unless it is terminated in a grounding electrode (*see 10.5.4*) within 24 in. (600 mm) or connected to a loop conductor.

10.4.1.8 An air gap shall be permitted to break the path of a main conductor, subject to the conditions in 10.5.5.

10.4.2 Bonding Conductor.

10.4.2.1 A bonding conductor made of copper shall have a cross-sectional area of at least 0.013 in.² (8.3 mm²).

10.4.2.2 A bonding conductor made of aluminum shall have a cross-sectional area of at least 0.025 in.² (16 mm²).

10.4.2.3* A conducting fitting constructed of metal other than copper or aluminum that neither contains electrical wiring nor connects conductors containing electrical wiring shall be permitted to be used as a bonding conductor if it meets the minimum cross-sectional area given by one of the following formulas:

[10.4.2.3a]

$$A = 1.3 \times 10^2 \sqrt{\frac{\rho}{C_p D (MP - 77)}} \text{ in.}^2$$

where:

A = cross-sectional area (in.²)
 ρ = resistivity (Ω in.)
 C_p = specific heat capacity (Btu/lb_m °F)
 D = density (lb_m/in.³)
 MP = melting point (°F)

[10.4.2.3b]

$$A = 3.8 \times 10^9 \sqrt{\frac{\rho}{C_p D (MP - 298)}} \text{ mm}^2$$

where:

A = cross-sectional area (mm²)
 ρ = resistivity (Ω m)
 C_p = specific heat capacity (J/kg⁻¹ K⁻¹)
 D = density (kg/m³)
 MP = melting point (K)

10.4.2.4* A conducting fitting constructed of metal other than copper or aluminum that either contains electrical wiring or connects conductors containing electrical wiring shall be permitted to be used as a bonding conductor if it has the same or smaller dc resistance per unit length as a copper conductor with a cross-sectional area of 0.013 in.² (8.3 mm²).

10.4.2.5 Metallic fittings, including masts, handrails, toe rails, stanchions, through bolts, bimini tops, outriggers, flybridges, and dinghy davits, shall be permitted to be used as bonding conductors, provided they meet the requirements of 10.4.2.

10.4.2.6 No bonding conductor shall pass within 6 in. (150 mm) of the unheeled waterline unless it is within 24 in. (600 mm) of a grounding electrode (*see 10.5.4*).

10.4.2.7* Large metallic masses shall be connected to the loop conductor, a bonding conductor, or a main conductor with at least one bonding conductor.

10.4.2.8 The lower end of each metallic shroud or stay shall be bonded horizontally to the loop conductor.

10.4.2.9 The connection to the shroud or its chainplate shall be permitted to be made near deck level.

10.4.3 Loop Conductor.

10.4.3.1* A main-size loop conductor shall be routed as horizontally as possible to form a continuous conducting loop outboard of crewed areas, wiring, and electronics.

10.4.3.2* A main conductor connected to a strike termination device along the center axis of the watercraft shall be connected to the loop conductor by a two-way path.

10.4.3.3 For a vessel with a perimeter greater than 100 ft (30 m), at least one main conductor shall be connected from the loop conductor to the grounding electrode system for each 100 ft (30 m) of the perimeter.

10.4.4 Conductor System.

10.4.4.1* All main conductors, bonding conductors, and loop conductors shall be interconnected to form the lightning conductor system.

10.4.4.2 Each interconnection shall consist of a conductor no smaller than a bonding conductor as described in 10.4.2, or a connecting fitting satisfying the requirements in 10.4.6.

10.4.4.3 Each connection between conductors shall satisfy the requirements in 10.4.5.

10.4.4.4 The path between each strike termination device and each grounding electrode (*see 10.5.4*) shall be connected by at least one main conductor.

10.4.4.5 The thickness of any copper ribbon, strip, or hollow conductor in the system shall be not less than 0.052 in. (1.3 mm).

10.4.4.6 The thickness of any aluminum ribbon, strip, or hollow conductor in the system shall be not less than 0.064 in. (1.63 mm).

10.4.4.7 The lightning conductor system shall be connected to both the dc and ac electric grounds using a bonding conductor.

10.4.5 Connections.

10.4.5.1 Connections shall be mechanically strong and able to withstand any torque, force, or tension to be expected during normal operation.

10.4.5.2* Where a connection is made between conductors of the same material, the contact area shall be at least as large as the cross-sectional area of the conductor.

10.4.5.2.1 The minimum contact area for a connection in a main conductor shall be given by 10.4.1.1 (for copper), 10.4.1.2 (for aluminum), or 10.4.1.3 (for other metals).

10.4.5.2.2 For a connection in a bonding conductor or between a bonding conductor and a main conductor, the contact minimum area shall be given by 10.4.2.1 (for copper), 10.4.2.2 (for aluminum), or 10.4.2.3 (for other metals).

10.4.5.3 Where a connection is made between two different metals, the minimum contact area shall be that required in 10.4.1.3 for a main conductor and 10.4.2.3 for a bonding conductor.

10.4.5.4 With the exception of bimetallic connectors, direct contact between metals whose galvanic potential differs by more than 0.5 V shall not be permitted.

10.4.5.5 For plated metals, the galvanic potential shall be that of the plating.

10.4.5.6 No connection between metals whose galvanic potential differs by more than 0.5 V shall be permitted in locations where immersion is likely, such as the bilge, unless the connection is encapsulated in a waterproof enclosure.

10.4.5.7 In those cases where it is impractical to avoid a junction of dissimilar metals, the corrosion effect shall be reduced by the use of plating or special connectors, such as stainless steel connectors used between aluminum and copper or copper alloys.

10.4.6 Connecting Fittings.

10.4.6.1 Fittings of any length that are made of aluminum shall be permitted to join two conductors if the minimum cross-sectional area meets the requirements of 10.4.1 for main conductors or 10.4.2 for bonding conductors.

10.4.6.2* Connecting fittings made of metals other than aluminum or copper shall meet either of the following criteria:

- (1) Have the same resistance per unit length as the corresponding type of conductor (that is, main or bonding)
- (2) Have a cross-sectional area at least as large as that given in 10.4.1.3 for a main conductor or 10.4.2.3 for a bonding conductor, and have a resistance that is not more than the resistance of 24 in. (600 mm) of the corresponding copper conductor

10.5 Grounding.

10.5.1 Watercraft with Metal Hulls. Where an electrical connection exists between a metallic hull and a lightning air terminal or other metallic superstructure of sufficient height to provide the zone of protection specified in Section 10.3, no further protection shall be necessary.

10.5.2 Watercraft with Nonmetallic Hulls.

10.5.2.1* Grounding electrodes shall be installed on the nonmetallic hull of a watercraft to provide multiple paths for the lightning current to exit into the water.

10.5.2.2 Each grounding electrode shall be connected either directly to a main conductor or to a main conductor through an air gap that satisfies all conditions in 10.5.5.

10.5.2.3* Rudders, struts, seacocks, through-hull fittings, or any other metallic fittings that meet the requirements of either 10.5.4.1 or 10.5.4.2 shall be permitted to be used as grounding electrodes.

10.5.2.4 Through-hull connectors to a grounding electrode shall be metallic and have a cross-sectional area equivalent to a main conductor.

10.5.3 Main Grounding Electrode.

10.5.3.1 At least one grounding electrode shall be an immersed solid conductor that has a contact area with the water of at least 1 ft² (0.09 m²), a thickness of at least $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm), and a width of at least $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm).

10.5.3.2 The area of a main grounding electrode shall be determined as the outward-facing area of the surface that is in contact with the water.

10.5.3.3 A main grounding electrode shall be immersed during all normal modes of vessel operation.

10.5.3.4 A main grounding electrode shall be permitted to be comprised of multiple immersed solid conductors that are interconnected by at least one main conductor where each conductor satisfies 10.5.3.3 and the aggregate contact area as determined by 10.5.3 is at least 1 ft² (0.09 m²).

10.5.4 Supplemental Grounding Electrode.

10.5.4.1* A supplemental grounding electrode that has less than 1 ft² (0.09 m²) of its area in contact with the water shall be permitted to be used.

10.5.4.2 The outboard surface of the grounding electrode shall be less than 0.04 in. (1 mm) inside the outer finished surface of the hull, including coatings and paint.

10.5.5* Galvanic Corrosion Protection.

10.5.5.1 A spark gap or (GDT) shall be permitted to break the path of a main conductor within 8 in. (200 mm) of a grounding electrode.

10.5.5.2 The breakdown voltage of a spark gap or (GDT) shall be not less than 600 V and not greater than 15 kV.

10.5.5.3 With the exception of the gap itself, all components in and connections to a spark gap device shall have a cross-sectional area meeting the requirements for a main conductor.

Chapter 11 Protection for Airfield Lighting Circuits

11.1 General.

11.1.1* This chapter shall provide the minimum lightning protection system installation requirements for airfield lighting systems and components.

11.1.2* Installation of lightning protection systems for airfield lighting shall be below grade in accordance with the provisions of this chapter.

11.2 Application.

11.2.1* The airfield lighting counterpoise system shall be a separate and unique lightning protection system specifically suited for use with series (current-driven) airfield lighting circuits.

11.2.2 To reduce the potential for flashover and any inductive or capacitive coupling arising from a lightning strike, the counterpoise conductor shall be a separate bare conductor and not be located within any raceway used for power, communications, control, or signal conductors.

11.2.3 All requirements of Section 4.2, Section 4.3, Section 4.4, 4.8.5, Section 4.12, and Section 4.13 shall apply, except as modified by this chapter.

11.2.4* An airfield lighting lightning protection system shall be permitted to be omitted by the AHJ when the average lightning flash density is less than or equal to one flash per square kilometer per year.

11.3 Purpose.

11.3.1 The airfield lighting counterpoise system shall provide protection for airfield lighting systems from energy arising from lightning strikes.

11.3.2* The airfield lighting counterpoise system shall provide a path for dissipation of lightning discharge energy to earth to minimize damage to equipment, raceway, or cables, and reduce the risk of electrical shock to personnel.

11.4 Airfield Lighting Counterpoise System.

11.4.1 Counterpoise Conductor Materials.

11.4.1.1* The counterpoise conductor shall be a bare, annealed, or soft drawn, solid copper conductor not smaller than 6 AWG.

11.4.1.2* In locations where bare copper counterpoise conductors will be adversely affected by the environment, corrosion-resistant materials (e.g., tinned copper, stainless steel) as permitted by the AHJ shall be utilized.

11.4.2 Counterpoise Conductor Installation. The counterpoise conductor shall be installed in accordance with 11.4.2.1 through 11.4.2.6.

11.4.2.1 The counterpoise conductor shall be bonded to grounding electrodes at intervals not exceeding 500 ft (150 m).

11.4.2.2 The counterpoise conductor shall be bonded to grounding electrodes located on each side of a raceway crossing under the airfield pavement.

11.4.2.3 The airfield lighting counterpoise system shall connect to the airfield lighting vault or other airfield lighting circuit power source grounding electrode system.

11.4.2.4* Surge arresters shall be permitted to be installed in the airfield lighting circuit.

11.4.2.5 Reinforcing steel, where used as part of the light base installation, shall be bonded to the metallic light base using a minimum 6 AWG bare solid copper conductor.

11.4.2.6* The counterpoise conductor shall be installed by using one of the following methods:

- (1) Equipotential method as described in 11.4.2.6.1.
- (2) Isolation method as described in 11.4.2.6.2.

11.4.2.6.1 The counterpoise conductor shall be installed centered over the raceway or cable to be protected as described in 11.4.2.6.1.1 through 11.4.2.6.1.8 and as shown in Figure 11.4.2.6.1.

11.4.2.6.1.1 The counterpoise conductor shall be installed no less than 8 in. (200 mm) above the raceway or cable to be protected, except as permitted in 11.4.2.6.1.2 and 11.4.2.6.1.3.

11.4.2.6.1.2* The counterpoise conductor height above the raceway or cable to be protected shall be permitted to be adjusted subject to coordination with the airfield lighting and pavement designs.

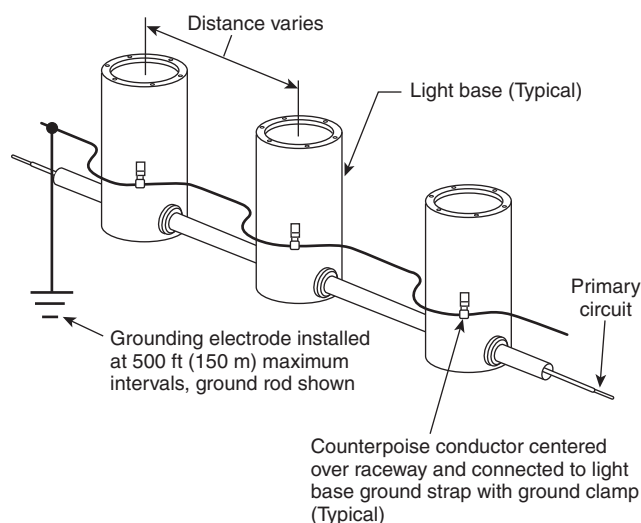


FIGURE 11.4.2.6.1 Counterpoise Centered Over Raceway or Cable to Be Protected.

11.4.2.6.1.3* Where the raceway is installed by the directional bore, jack and bore, or other drilling method, the counterpoise conductor shall be permitted to be installed concurrently with the directional bore, jack and bore, or other drilling method raceway, external to the raceway or sleeve.

11.4.2.6.1.4 The counterpoise conductor shall be installed no more than 12 in. (300 mm) above the raceway or cable to be protected.

11.4.2.6.1.5 The counterpoise conductor height above the protected raceway(s) or cable(s) shall be calculated to ensure that the raceway or cable is within a 45-degree area of protection.

11.4.2.6.1.6* The area of protection shall be determined only by the 45-degree triangular prism method depicted in Figure 11.4.2.6.1.6.

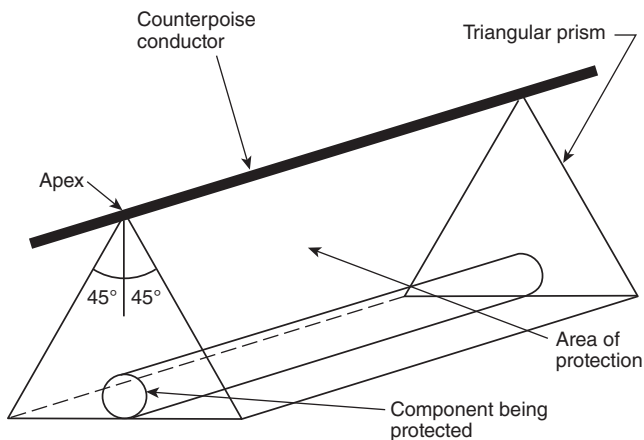
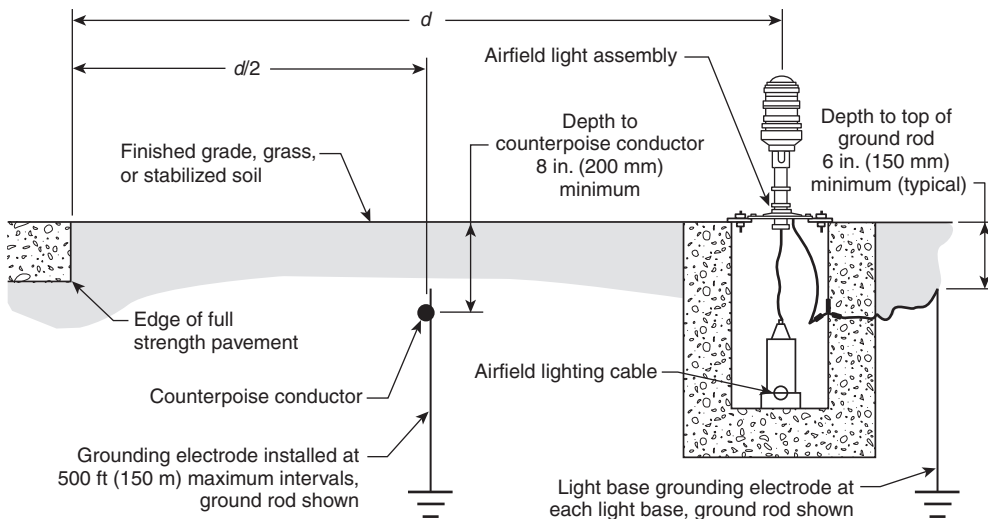


FIGURE 11.4.2.6.1.6 Area of Protection — Triangular Prism.



Note: Light base ground rod can be installed either through the bottom of the light base or exterior to the light base.

Δ FIGURE 11.4.2.6.2 Alternate Counterpoise Installation Method for Elevated Edge Light Fixtures Installed in Turf or Stabilized Soils and for Raceways or Cables Adjacent to the Full Strength Pavement Edge.

11.4.2.6.1.7 The counterpoise conductor shall be bonded to each metallic light base, mounting stake, and metallic airfield lighting component.

11.4.2.6.1.8* All metallic airfield lighting components in the field circuit on the output side of the constant current regulator (CCR) or other power source shall be bonded to the airfield lighting counterpoise system.

11.4.2.6.2* As an alternate counterpoise installation method for elevated edge light fixtures installed in turf or stabilized soils and for raceways or cables adjacent to the full strength pavement edge, the counterpoise conductor shall be installed halfway between the pavement edge and the light base, mounting stake, raceway, or cable, as described in 11.4.2.6.2.1 through 11.4.2.6.2.2 and as shown in Figure 11.4.2.6.2.

11.4.2.6.2.1 The counterpoise conductor shall be installed 8 in. (200 mm) minimum below grade.

11.4.2.6.2.2* Each light base or mounting stake shall be provided with a grounding electrode in accordance with one of the following methods:

- (1) Where a metallic light base is used, the grounding electrode shall be bonded to the metallic light base or mounting stake with a **minimum 6 AWG bare, annealed, or soft drawn, solid copper conductor**.
- (2) Where a nonmetallic light base is used, the grounding electrode shall be bonded to the metallic light fixture or metallic base plate with a **minimum 6 AWG bare, annealed, or soft drawn, solid copper conductor**.

11.4.3 Multiple Raceways or Cables in a Common Formation.

11.4.3.1* Multiple raceways or cables in a common formation or assembly wider than the area of protection provided by a single counterpoise conductor shall be provided with multiple counterpoise conductors as shown in Figure 11.4.3.1.

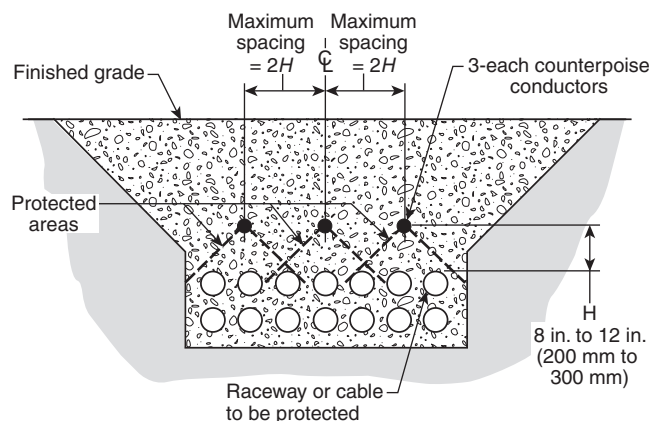


FIGURE 11.4.3.1 Multiple Airfield Lighting Raceways or Cables in a Common Formation.

11.4.3.1.1* The number of counterpoise conductors required shall be determined by the height of the counterpoise conductors over the raceways or cables being protected.

11.4.3.1.2 The 45-degree area of protection shall be maintained in accordance with 11.4.2.6.1.6.

11.4.3.1.3 The maximum separation between counterpoise conductors shall be twice the height of the counterpoise conductor above the protected raceway or cable.

11.4.3.2 Where multiple counterpoise conductors are used, they shall be interconnected longitudinally at intervals not exceeding 300 ft (90 m) as shown in Figure 11.4.3.2.

11.4.4 Counterpoise Conductor Interconnections.

11.4.4.1* Where raceways or cables cross, the counterpoise conductors shall be interconnected.

11.4.4.2* Where an existing airfield lighting system is being extended or modified, the new counterpoise conductors shall be interconnected to existing counterpoise conductors at each intersection of the new and existing airfield lighting counterpoise systems.

11.4.5 Grounding Electrodes.

11.4.5.1* The counterpoise conductor shall be bonded to grounding electrodes in accordance with 11.4.2.1.

11.4.5.2* Grounding electrodes shall comply with all requirements of 4.12.2, 4.12.5, 4.12.6, 4.12.7, and 4.12.8, except as modified by this chapter.

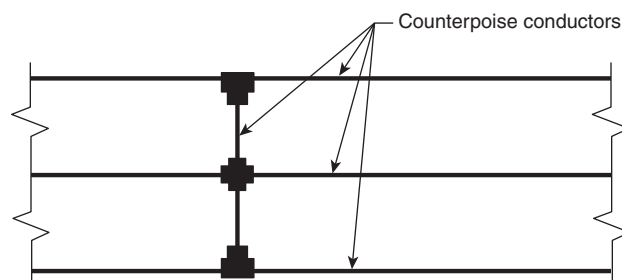


FIGURE 11.4.3.2 Multiple Counterpoise Conductor Installation Interconnection — Plan View.

11.4.5.3 Ground rods shall not be less than $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (15.9 mm) in diameter nor less than 8 ft (2.4 m) long.

11.4.5.4 The top of the installed ground rod shall be 6 in. (150 mm) minimum below grade.

11.4.6 Bonding Jumpers. A minimum 6 AWG stranded copper green insulated bonding jumper shall be installed between the following items:

- (1) In-pavement airfield lighting fixture and the metallic light base
- (2) Elevated fixture base plate and metallic light base
- (3) Surge arresters and metallic light base

11.4.6.1 A bonding jumper shall be installed between the metallic frame of the airfield lighting sign(s) or other system components not listed in 11.4.6 and its respective metallic light base.

11.4.6.2 Bonding jumper length shall permit direct removal and maintenance of the airfield lighting component without damage to or disconnection of the bonding jumper and not interfere with the intended operation of a frangible coupling.

11.4.6.3 Copper conductors and copper braids of equal current-carrying capacity shall be permitted as an alternative to the minimum 6 AWG bonding jumper as permitted by the AHJ.

11.4.6.4 Frangible couplings shall be conductive.

11.4.6.5* All non-current-carrying electrically conductive materials having the potential to become energized by a lightning-induced surge shall be bonded together and bonded to the airfield lighting counterpoise system.

11.4.7* Metallic Light Base Grounding.

11.4.7.1 New metallic light bases shall be provided with ground straps for internal and external grounding connections.

11.4.7.2 The retroactive installation of ground straps on existing metallic light bases shall comply with the following:

- (1) The installation of ground straps shall only be required on existing light bases encountered as part of new construction.
- (2) The installation of ground straps shall not interfere with the structural integrity of the light base.

11.4.8 Connection Requirements.

11.4.8.1 Counterpoise conductor connectors shall be listed for direct earth burial and concrete encasement.

11.4.8.2* Galvanically compatible connectors and fittings shall comply with 11.4.8.2.1 through 11.4.8.2.4.

11.4.8.2.1 Galvanically compatible connectors and fittings shall be used for splicing or bonding dissimilar metals.

11.4.8.2.2 Conductive oxide inhibitors shall be designed for the specific application and metals used in the connection.

11.4.8.2.3 Conductive oxide inhibitors shall be applied to the mating surfaces of all connections involving dissimilar metals.

11.4.8.2.4 Where a corrosion-protective paint or coating is removed, the electrical connection shall have corrosion protection equal to the original coating.

11.4.8.3 Listed equipment shall be installed and used in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions included as part of the listing.

11.4.8.4* The metallic light base ground strap with ground clamp shall be used for grounding and bonding connections to the light base.

11.4.8.5* Grounding, bonding, and counterpoise conductor connections not included in 11.4.8.1 through 11.4.8.4 shall be made by exothermic weld or high-compression connector.

11.4.9 Bend Radius. The counterpoise conductor radius of bend shall not be less than 8 in. (200 mm) nor form an included (inside) angle of less than 90 degrees, as shown in Figure 4.8.5.

Chapter 12 Protection for Solar Arrays

12.1 General. The intent of this chapter shall be to provide lightning protection requirements for roof-mounted or ground-mounted solar arrays (photovoltaic and thermal collectors) and associated electrical or mechanical systems.

12.2 Fundamental Principles of Protection.

12.2.1 Roof-mounted or ground-mounted arrays subject to direct lightning strike shall be protected in accordance with Chapter 4 and as supplemented in this chapter.

12.2.2 Protection shall be provided by either of the following methods:

- (1) Direct mounting of strike termination devices to the solar array rack as shown in Figure 12.2.2(a)

- (2) Locating strike termination devices (including air terminals, masts, and overhead ground wires) adjacent to the solar panels in such a manner as to place the solar panels in a zone of protection as defined in Section 4.7 and shown in Figure 12.2.2(b).

12.3 Strike Termination Devices.

12.3.1 Strike termination devices shall not be required for solar panels or arrays that are located within a zone of protection provided in accordance with Section 4.7.

12.3.2 Strike termination devices shall be required in accordance with 12.3.2.1 through 12.3.2.3 for solar panels or arrays not located in a zone of protection.

12.3.2.1 Sloped solar panels or arrays having a horizontal distance (run) of 40 ft (12 m) or less and a slope of $\frac{1}{8}$ (7.5 degrees from the horizontal) or greater and solar panels or arrays having a horizontal distance (run) of more than 40 ft (12 m) and a slope of $\frac{1}{4}$ (15 degrees from the horizontal) or greater shall have strike termination devices located as follows:

- (1) Strike termination devices shall be located such that they extend a minimum of 10 in. (250 mm) vertically above the uppermost edge of the solar panel or array.
- (2) Strike termination devices shall be located such that they are within 24 in. (600 mm) of the ends of the apex of the solar panel or array.
- (3) Strike termination devices shall be located within 24 in. (600 mm) of the apex of the solar panel or array.
- (4) Strike termination devices shall be located at intervals not exceeding 20 ft (6 m) along the apex of the solar panel or array.

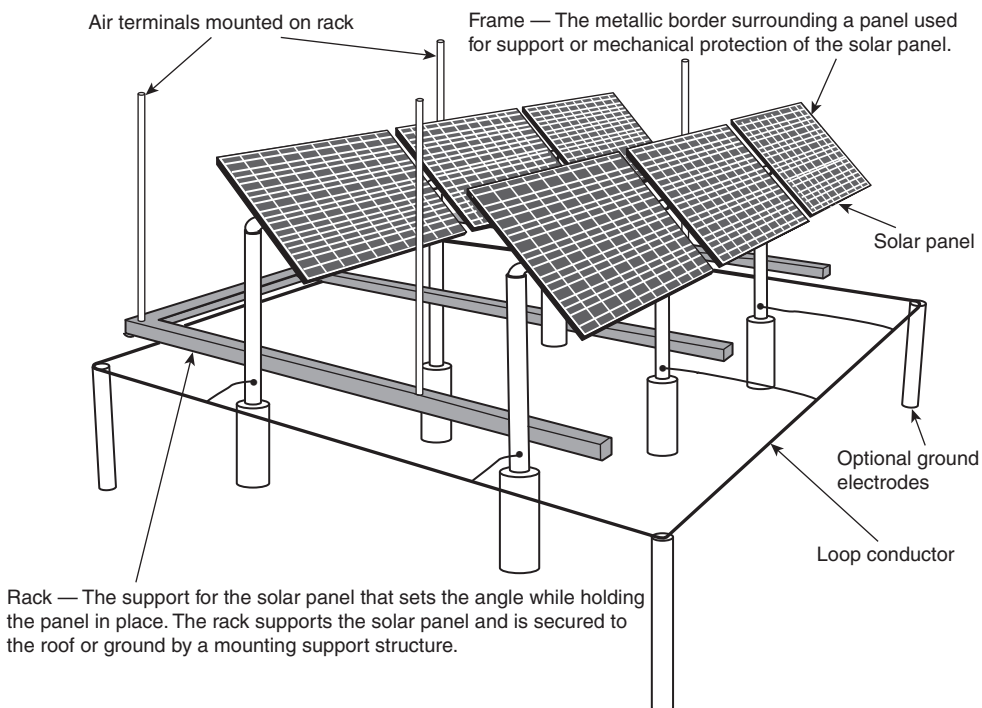
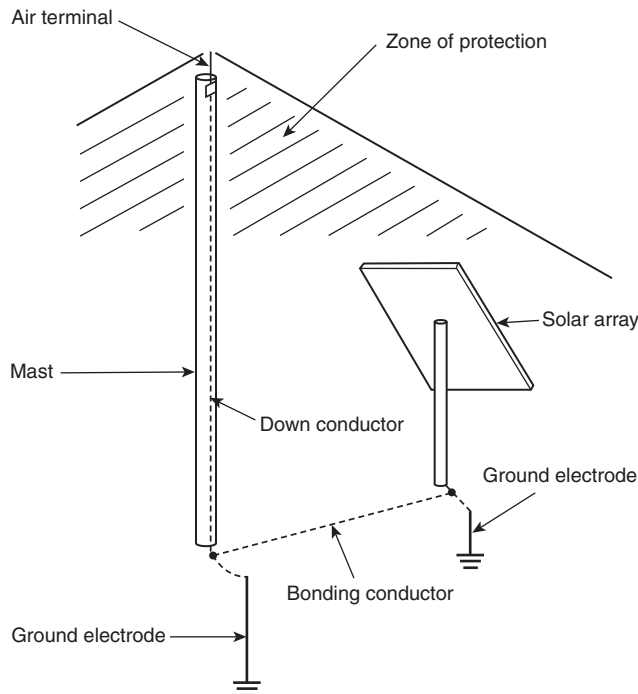


FIGURE 12.2.2(a) Typical Protection Arrangement with Air Terminals Mounted from Rack.



Grounding of the solar panel (i.e., all exposed metal parts) is also required under Article 690 of *NFPA 70*.

FIGURE 12.2.2(b) Typical Adjacent Mast Arrangement to Provide Zone of Protection for Solar Array.

- (5) Strike termination devices that extend 24 in. (600 mm) or more above the apex of the solar panel or array shall be permitted to be placed at intervals not exceeding 25 ft (7.6 m) along the uppermost edge of the solar panel or array.

12.3.3.2 Solar panels or arrays that have a slope of less than $\frac{1}{4}$ (15 degrees from horizontal) and the distance from the uppermost edge to the lowermost edge along the face of the panel or array exceeds 20 ft (6 m) shall have strike termination devices located as follows:

- (1) Strike termination devices shall be located within 24 in. (600 mm) of the outermost corners of the solar panel or array unless those corners are within a zone of protection.
- (2) Strike termination devices shall be located at intervals not exceeding 20 ft (6 m) along all edges of the solar panel or array unless those edges are within a zone of protection.
- (3) Strike termination devices that extend 24 in. (600 mm) or more above the edges of the solar panel or array shall be permitted to be placed at intervals not exceeding 25 ft (7.6 m) along the edges of the solar panel or array.

12.3.3.3 Solar panels or arrays that have a slope of less than $\frac{1}{4}$ and exceed 50 ft (15 m) in width and length shall comply with one of the following:

- (1) Strike termination devices located at intervals not to exceed 50 ft (15 m) on the solar array as illustrated in Figure 4.6.5.1(a) and Figure 4.6.5.1(b).
- (2) Strike termination devices that create zones of protection using the rolling sphere method so the sphere does not contact the solar array.

12.3.3* Strike termination devices shall be permitted to be mounted on the rack but shall not be secured directly to the frame of the solar panel.

12.3.4 Where practicable, the location of strike termination devices shall minimize the effects of shadowing on the solar panels.

12.4 Protection of Electrical and Mechanical Systems.

Δ 12.4.1 Where practicable, electrical and/or electromechanical control systems shall be protected with bonding, shielding, increased separation distance, and surge protection in accordance with the following:

- (1) Separation distance and bonding techniques maintained in accordance with Sections 4.14 and 4.15
- (2) Maximized distance between lightning air terminals and conductors and the solar array, electrical control systems, and cabling
- (3) Surge protective devices (SPDs) installed as close as practicable to the solar array and electrical systems (inverters) and to the solar tracking control systems
- (4) The photovoltaic (PV) output circuit cabling electromagnetically shielded by either braided wire sheath or wire mesh screen or installed within electrically bonded metallic conduit, cable trays, or raceways
- (5) Lightning conductors run separately and outside of the cable path of the PV output circuit

Δ 12.4.2 PV Surge Protection.

12.4.2.1 Surge protection shall be installed for the protection of PV systems and PV system dc circuits.

12.4.2.1.1 PV SPDs shall have a nominal discharge current rating (I_n) of 20 kA 8/20 μ s per mode.

12.4.2.1.2 PV SPDs shall be listed for use on PV systems and marked "DC," "DC PV," or "PV SPD."

12.4.2.1.3 If the system inverter is more than 100 ft (30 m) from the closest combiner or recombiner box, additional PV SPDs shall be required at the PV output circuit adjacent to the inverter.

12.4.2.1.4 PV SPDs provided on the PV output circuit shall have a nominal dc operating voltage or V_{pdc} rating equal to or greater than the maximum photovoltaic system voltage of the circuit(s) as specified in Article 690 of *NFPA 70*.

Δ 12.4.2.1.5 The short-circuit current rating of the PV SPD shall be not less than the prospective fault current of the PV output circuit(s).

12.4.2.1.6 The voltage protection rating of each mode of the PV SPD shall be no greater than three times the circuit's maximum PV system voltage to which that mode is connected.

Δ 12.4.2.1.7 For two-port PV SPDs, the load current rating of the SPD shall be equal to or greater than that of the system's load current to the inverter.

12.4.2.1.8 The maximum rated ambient temperature of the PV SPD shall not be exceeded.

N 12.4.2.2 AC PV Protection.

N 12.4.2.2.1 SPDs shall be installed for the protection of electric power production and distribution network circuits and equipment supplied by an ac module system.

N 12.4.2.2.2 SPDs shall be listed and comply with Section 4.19 and Part II of Article 242 of *NFPA 70*.

N 12.4.2.2.3 The SPD shall be located at the PV system disconnect as specified in Article 690 of *NFPA 70*.

12.4.3 Inverter Output Surge Protection.

12.4.3.1 Surge protection in accordance with Section 4.19 shall be provided at the ac output of the inverter.

12.4.3.2 SPDs shall have a nominal discharge current rating (I_n) of 20 kA 8/20 μ s per mode.

12.4.3.3 The short-circuit current rating of the SPD shall be not less than the prospective fault current of the inverter.

Δ 12.4.3.4 The voltage protection rating of the SPD shall be no greater than those in Table 4.19.2.7.

12.4.3.5 For distribution system voltages exceeding the values in Table 4.19.2.7, the voltage protection rating shall be permitted to be three times the ac output voltage of the inverter.

12.4.3.6 The maximum rated ambient temperature of the SPD shall not be exceeded.

12.5 Grounding.

12.5.1 Ground-Mounted Systems.

12.5.1.1 Systems that include a metallic structure shall be grounded in accordance with 4.12.4, utilizing a ground ring electrode encompassing the perimeter of each array.

12.5.1.1.1 Combinations of other grounding electrodes in Section 4.12 shall be permitted.

12.5.1.1.2 Ground ring electrodes of adjacent ground-mounted systems within 25 ft (7.6 m) shall be interconnected.

12.5.1.2 Systems that rely on the metallic structure to form parts of the lightning protection system shall be made electrically continuous by the methods specified in 4.18.3.

12.5.1.3 For solar arrays that do not rely on the metallic structure to form part of the lightning protection system, each separate row or structure shall be bonded at one location directly to the ground ring electrode.

12.5.1.4* Solar arrays that do not rely on the metallic structure to form part of the lightning protection system shall be electrically continuous.

12.5.2 Roof-Mounted Systems.

12.5.2.1 Solar arrays shall be bonded in accordance with Section 4.14.

12.5.2.2* Solar arrays shall be made electrically continuous.

12.5.2.3 If the structure forms part of or is within the required separation distance from the lightning protection system, the metallic structure of the system shall be made electrically continuous in accordance with Chapter 4.

12.5.2.4 Roof conductors interconnecting strike termination devices protecting roof-mounted solar panels shall be provided with down conductors and grounding electrodes in accordance with Chapter 4.

12.5.2.5 Roof conductors interconnecting strike termination devices protecting roof-mounted solar panels shall be connected

to the structure lightning protection system in accordance with Chapter 4.

Annex A Explanatory Material

Annex A is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only. This annex contains explanatory material, numbered to correspond with the applicable text paragraphs.

A.1.1.2 Electric generating facilities whose primary purpose is to generate electric power are excluded from this standard with regard to generation, transmission, and distribution of power. Most electrical utilities have standards covering the protection of their facilities and equipment. Installations not directly related to those areas and structures housing such installations can be protected against lightning by the provisions of this standard.

A.1.2 The safeguarding of persons is a foremost concern of this standard. Although it is impossible to prevent all threats from lightning, this standard makes recommendations for personal safety from lightning, which are located primarily in Annex M.

A.1.5.2 Installation of a lightning protection system requires special skills; if the system is not installed correctly, it could be counterproductive. Certification for fitness could include review of installation experience and credentials.

A.1.6 Guidance on an effective maintenance program is provided in Annex D. Keeping the lightning protection system up to date with current standards ensures the greatest level of safety. Structures that have undergone additions and/or alterations should be brought into compliance with the current standards. When a lightning protection system is upgraded, as-built drawings should be revised to document modifications. These drawings should include test point locations where applicable. Where required by the AHJ, test records of the new configured system should be provided to establish a new baseline for future test measurements.

A.3.2.1 Approved. The National Fire Protection Association does not approve, inspect, or certify any installations, procedures, equipment, or materials; nor does it approve or evaluate testing laboratories. In determining the acceptability of installations, procedures, equipment, or materials, the authority having jurisdiction may base acceptance on compliance with NFPA or other appropriate standards. In the absence of such standards, said authority may require evidence of proper installation, procedure, or use. The authority having jurisdiction may also refer to the listings or labeling practices of an organization that is concerned with product evaluations and is thus in a position to determine compliance with appropriate standards for the current production of listed items.

A.3.2.2 Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ). The phrase "authority having jurisdiction," or its acronym AHJ, is used in NFPA documents in a broad manner, since jurisdictions and approval agencies vary, as do their responsibilities. Where public safety is primary, the authority having jurisdiction may be a federal, state, local, or other regional department or individual such as a fire chief; fire marshal; chief of a fire prevention bureau, labor department, or health department; building official; electrical inspector; or others having statutory authority. For insurance purposes, an insurance inspection department, rating bureau, or other insurance company

representative may be the authority having jurisdiction. In many circumstances, the property owner or his or her designated agent assumes the role of the authority having jurisdiction; at government installations, the commanding officer or departmental official may be the authority having jurisdiction.

A.3.2.4 Listed. The means for identifying listed equipment may vary for each organization concerned with product evaluation; some organizations do not recognize equipment as listed unless it is also labeled. The authority having jurisdiction should utilize the system employed by the listing organization to identify a listed product.

A.3.3.1 Air Terminal. Typical air terminals are formed of a tube or solid rod and are listed for the purpose. Air terminals are sometimes called *lightning rods*.

A.3.3.2 Bonded, Inherently. Inherent bonding is achieved in construction through common methods such as welding, high-compression fittings, or bolting. Bonding forms a mechanically robust, low-resistance electrical connection between conductive parts.

One method to determine whether metal bodies are inherently bonded through construction is to perform a bonding test using test equipment suitable for the purpose. The bonding resistance value should typically be in the tens of milliohms but should not exceed 200 milliohms.

A.3.3.4 Cable. See Table 4.1.1.1.1 and Table 4.1.1.1.2.

A.3.3.7 Combination Waveform Generator. For the open-circuit waveform, the front time = $1.67 (\text{t}_{90} - \text{t}_{30})$, where t_{90} and t_{30} are times to the 90 percent and the 30 percent amplitude points on the leading edge of the waveform. The duration of this waveform will be the time between virtual origin and time to the 50 percent point on the tail. (Virtual origin is the intersection of the line connecting t_{90} and t_{30} , with $V = 0$.)

For the short-circuit waveform, the front time = $1.25 (\text{t}_{90} - \text{t}_{10})$, where t_{90} and t_{10} are times to the 90 percent and the 10 percent amplitude points on the leading edge of the waveform. The duration will be the time between virtual origin and time to the 50 percent point on the tail. (Virtual origin is the intersection of the line connecting t_{90} and t_{10} , with $I = 0$.)

A.3.3.8.4 Ground Loop Conductor. A ground ring electrode that provides the common grounding requirements meets the requirements of a ground loop conductor.

A.3.3.8.6 Main Conductor. The main conductor also serves as a strike termination device for catenary lightning protection systems.

A.3.3.10.1 Bolted Connector. In addition to the requirements of this standard, compliance with all manufacturer's installation instructions, recommendations, and product markings ensures a proper installation of connectors. This includes the safe and proper use of connector installation tools. See Figure A.3.3.10.1(a) and Figure A.3.3.10.1(b) for examples of a bolted connector.

A.3.3.10.2 Crimp Connector. In addition to the requirements of this standard, compliance with all manufacturer's installation instructions, recommendations, and product markings ensures a proper installation of connectors. This includes the safe and proper use of connector installation tools. See Figure A.3.3.10.2(a) and Figure A.3.3.10.2(b) for examples of a crimp connector.

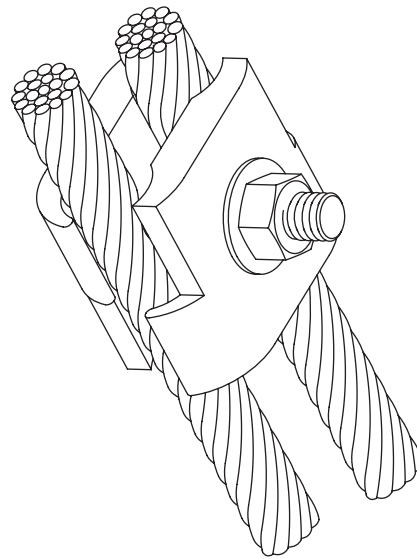


FIGURE A.3.3.10.1(a) Example of a Bolted Connector.

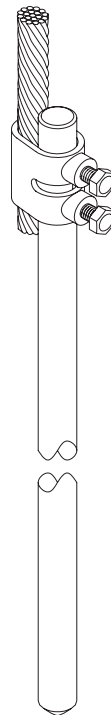
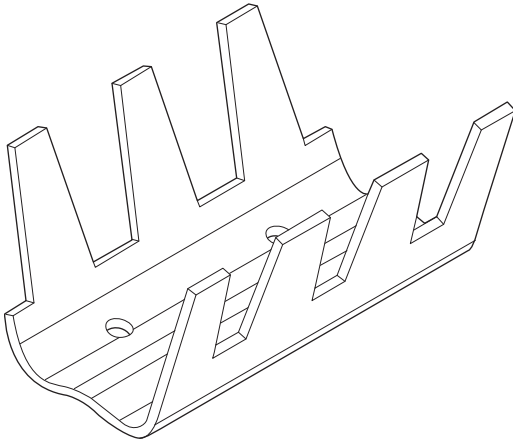
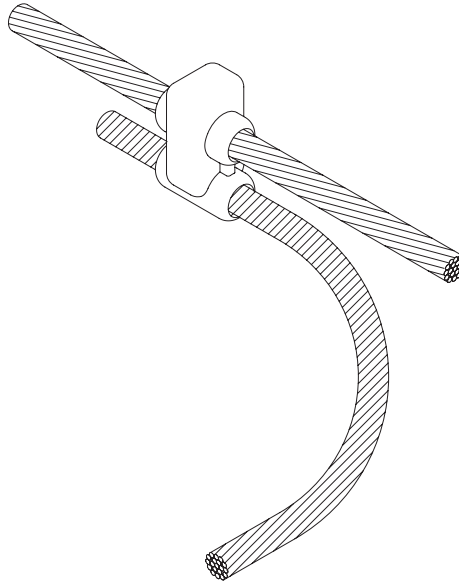


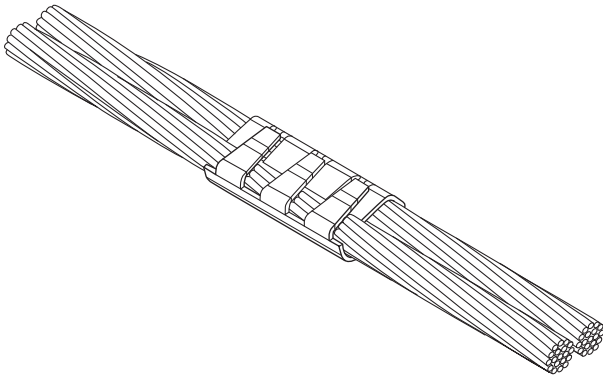
FIGURE A.3.3.10.1(b) Example of a Bolted Connector.



N FIGURE A.3.3.10.2(a) Example of a Crimp Connector.



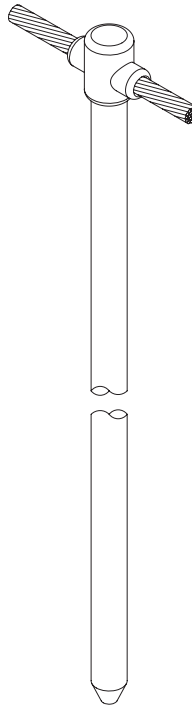
N FIGURE A.3.3.10.3(a) Example of an Exothermic Weld.



N FIGURE A.3.3.10.2(b) Example of a Crimp Connector.

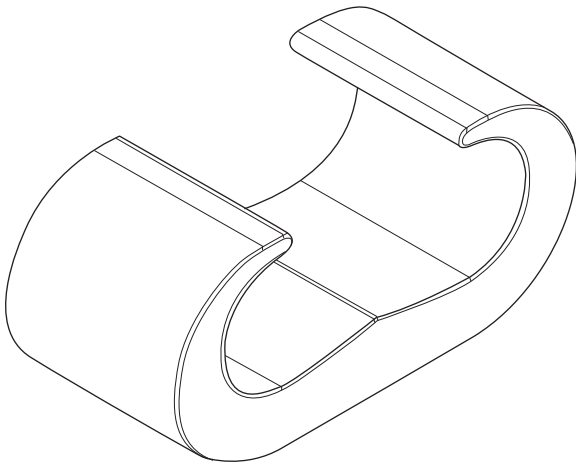
N A.3.3.10.3 Exothermic Weld. In addition to the requirements of this standard, compliance with all manufacturer's installation instructions, recommendations, and product markings ensures a proper installation of connectors. This includes the safe and proper use of connector installation molds, weld metal, and accessories. See Figure A.3.3.10.3(a) and Figure A.3.3.10.3(b) for examples of an exothermic weld.

N A.3.3.10.4 High-Compression Connector. In addition to the requirements of this standard, compliance with all manufacturer's installation instructions, recommendations, and product markings ensures a proper installation of connectors. This includes the safe and proper use of connector installation tools. See Figure A.3.3.10.4(a), Figure A.3.3.10.4(b), Figure A.3.3.10.4(c), and Figure A.3.3.10.4(d) for examples of a high-compression connector.

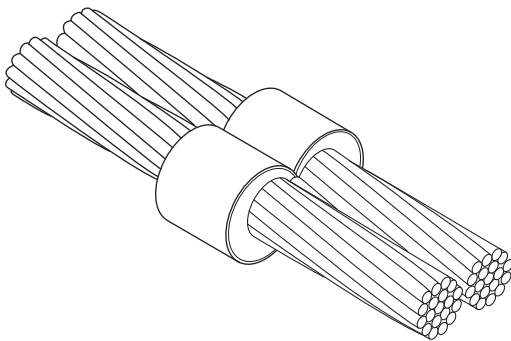


N FIGURE A.3.3.10.3(b) Example of an Exothermic Weld.

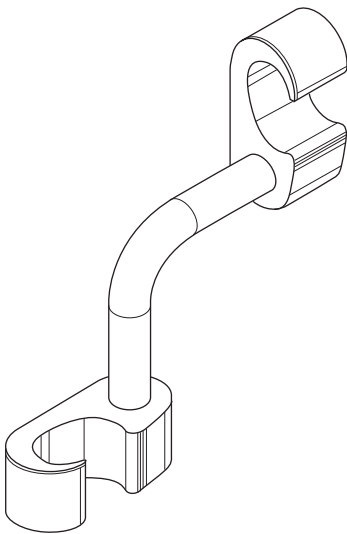
A.3.3.15 Flammable Air-Vapor Mixtures. The combustion range for ordinary petroleum products, such as gasoline, is from about 1½ percent to 7½ percent of vapor by volume, the remainder being air.



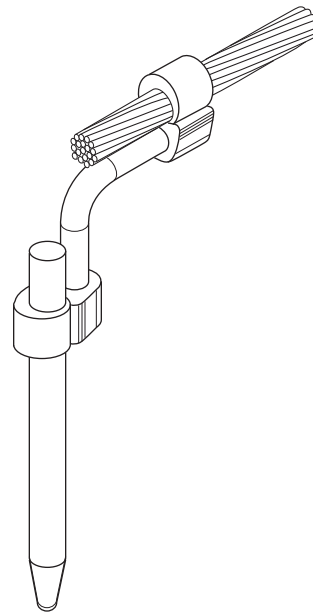
N FIGURE A.3.3.10.4(a) Example of a High-Compression Connector.



N FIGURE A.3.3.10.4(b) Example of a High-Compression Connector.



N FIGURE A.3.3.10.4(c) Example of a High-Compression Connector.



N FIGURE A.3.3.10.4(d) Example of a High-Compression Connector.

A.3.3.24 Light Base. The light base is cylindrically shaped with a closed bottom and a top flange to mate with an airfield fixture or cover. Currently available light bases have provisions for cable or conduit entry and exit and provisions for bonding.

Type L-867 light bases and extensions are used for applications subject to occasional light vehicular loading but no aircraft or other heavy vehicular loading. Type L-868 light bases and extensions are used for applications subject to aircraft and other heavy vehicular loading. Light bases, which can be fabricated from metallic or nonmetallic materials, serve as a connection point for the raceway and housing for mounting the light fixture. Light bases are subject to direct earth burial with or without concrete backfill. Drain connections, load rings, and other options are available for the light base.

Additional information can be found in FAA Advisory Circular 150/5345-42J, *Specification for Airport Light Bases, Transformer Housings, Junction Boxes, and Accessories*.

A.3.3.26 Lightning Protection System. The term refers to systems as described and detailed in this standard. A traditional lightning protection system used for structures is described in Chapter 4.

A.3.3.31.1 Class I Materials. See Table 4.1.1.1.1.

A.3.3.31.2 Class II Materials. See Table 4.1.1.1.2.

A.3.3.32 Mounting Stake. When not installed on a light base, an elevated light fixture is installed on a mounting stake. The mounting stake is made of $2 \times 2 \times \frac{3}{16}$ in. (50.8 × 50.8 × 4.8 mm) steel angle stock or equivalent. The mounting stake is provided with a fitting attached at the top to receive the light fixture and frangible coupling. The length of the stake and fitting do not exceed 30 in. (762 mm).

A.3.3.34 Raceway. The terms *conduit*, *duct*, or *duct bank* should be considered raceways of nominally circular cross-sectional area designed to provide physical protection and routing for

conductors. Where a requirement of this standard would be applicable to one raceway, it should be considered applicable to all combinations of raceways included in this item. The term *electrical ducts*, as used in Article 310 of *NFPA 70*, includes electrical conduits and or other raceways that are round in cross section that are suitable for use underground or embedded in concrete.

A.3.3.38 Solar Panel. Collectors collect heat by absorbing sunlight and are used in water heater systems, parabolic troughs, parabolic-dish type, evacuated-tube type, solar air heaters, and solar tower systems. Modules convert solar radiation into direct current (dc) electricity.

N A.3.3.42 Surge. Surges do not include longer duration temporary overvoltages (TOV), which consist of an increase in the power frequency voltage for several cycles.

N A.3.3.43 Surge Arrester. A surge arrester also prevents continued flow of follow current while remaining capable of repeating these functions.

Requirements for surge arresters are outlined in Part III of Article 242 of *NFPA 70* and Section 19 of ANSI C2, *National Electrical Safety Code (NEC)*. For further information on surge arresters, see IEEE C62.11-2012, *Standard for Metal-Oxide Surge Arresters for AC Power Circuits (>1 kV)*, and IEEE C62.22-2009, *Guide for the Application of Metal-Oxide Surge Arresters for Alternating-Current Systems*.

N A.3.3.44 Surge Protector. A surge protector consists of single- and multiple-pair air gap arresters, gas tube arresters, or solid-state arresters, with or without fuses or other voltage-limiting devices. Additional information on surge protectors can be found in UL 497, *Standard for Protectors for Paired-Conductor Communications Circuits*; UL 497A, *Standard for Secondary Protectors for Communications Circuits*; UL 497B, *Standard for Protectors for Data Communications and Fire-Alarm Circuits*; UL 497C, *Standard for Protectors for Coaxial Communications Circuits*; UL 497D, *Outline of Investigation for Component Secondary Protectors for Communications Circuits Used with Specified Voltage Suppression*; and UL 497E, *Outline of Investigation for Protectors for Antenna Lead-In Conductors*.

N A.3.3.45 Surge-Protective Device (SPD). Requirements for SPDs are outlined in Part II of Article 242 in *NFPA 70*. Additional information on Type 1, Type 2, and Type 3 SPDs can be found in UL 1449, *Surge Protective Devices*. SPDs are designated as follows:

Type 1: Permanently connected SPDs intended for installation between the secondary side of the service transformer and the line side of the service disconnect overcurrent device.

Type 2: Permanently connected SPDs intended for installation on the load side of the service disconnect overcurrent device, including SPDs located at the branch panel.

Type 3: Point of utilization SPDs.

N A.3.3.46 Tank Battery. Examples of items that might be included in a tank battery are connected piping, walkways, electrical systems, and data/communication systems.

Δ A.3.3.50 Voltage Protection Rating (VPR). The VPR is a rating (or ratings) selected by the manufacturer based on the measured limiting voltage determined during the transient voltage surge suppression test specified in UL 1449, *Safety for Surge Protective Devices*. This rating is the maximum voltage developed

when the SPD is exposed to a 3 kA, 8/20 μs current limited waveform through the device. It is a specific measured limiting voltage rating assigned to an SPD by testing done in accordance with UL 1449. Nominal VPR values include 330 V, 400 V, 500 V, 600 V, 700 V, and so forth.

A.4.1.1.1 Main-size lightning conductors are not manufactured to standard American Wire Gauge (AWG) sizes. Bare AWG conductors are not typically “listed for the purpose” for lightning protection by any listing authority. Table A.4.1.1.1 provides comparisons between lightning protection conductors and the closest AWG sizes from Table 8 in Chapter 9 of *NFPA 70*.

N A.4.2.2.3.1 The greater the separation of metals in the galvanic series, the greater the propensity for corrosion. Galvanic corrosion between aluminum and steel is generally not a problem unless they are in an environment rich in chlorides.

Hernández, et al. (2011) reported that the size of pitting in aluminum is greatly influenced by the concentration of pollutants in and the wetness of atmospheres. There was a linear relationship between pitting parameters and the chloride content in an environment, with a lesser effect from sulfur ions. The addition of sulphate ions to chloride-containing solutions increased the probability of larger pits.

The corrosion rate of aluminum increases with increasing relative humidity and temperature. Bengtsson, et al. (2001) reported that a humid salt spray environment increased the corrosion of aluminum by a factor of 10 to 20. It was suggested that the rapid corrosion of aluminum coated with salt in humidity-free air is connected to high-pH areas that develop in the electrolyte surface due to the cathodic reduction of oxygen.

Table A.4.1.1.1 Lightning Protection Conductors

Lightning Conductor	Area
Class I main-size copper lightning conductor	57,400 cir. mils
#2 AWG	66,360 cir. mils
#3 AWG	52,620 cir. mils
Class I main-size aluminum lightning conductor	98,600 cir. mils
#1 AWG	83,690 cir. mils
#1/0 AWG	105,600 cir. mils
Class II main-size copper lightning conductor	115,000 cir. mils
#1/0 AWG	105,600 cir. mils
#2/0 AWG	133,100 cir. mils
Class II main-size aluminum lightning conductor	192,000 cir. mils
#3/0 AWG	167,800 cir. mils
#4/0 AWG	211,600 cir. mils
Lightning bonding conductor	
Copper	26,240 cir. mils
#6 AWG	26,240 cir. mils
Lightning bonding conductor	
Aluminum	41,100 cir. mils
#4 AWG	41,740 cir. mils

N A.4.2.4 Runoff from copper surfaces and components is particularly detrimental to aluminum and aluminum-based coatings. The intent of this requirement is to ensure that lightning protection systems are not installed such that they can be compromised by incompatible runoff. The AHJ or building owner is responsible for understanding runoff issues, as well as issues with the interaction of lightning protection components with other elements of the structure.

N A.4.2.5 Aluminum and copper on any structure must be designed and installed to ensure compatibility such that the expected lifecycle for any given component can be realized. The AHJ or building owner must have a thorough understanding of these compatibility issues.

A.4.4.1 The requirement to protect conductors from mechanical damage does not preclude the running of exposed wiring at roofing perimeters, on roof surfaces, or in other similar locations where incidental foot traffic or manual disturbance of the conductor is possible. This paragraph is not intended to require the concealment of all exposed lightning protection components in conduit or another type of physical protection.

A.4.5.1.5 Where handrails are employed as part of the lightning protection system, it is important to caution that touch potential and sideflash issues could result. Signage or other methods should be provided to warn the public not to touch or stand near the handrails when lightning is probable, and that the handrail is an integral part of the lightning protection system.

A.4.5.2.1 Recent experiments described by Moore et al. in the *Journal of Applied Meteorology* suggest that the optimal air terminal tip radius of curvature for interception of lightning strikes is $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) minimum to $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (12.7 mm) maximum.

A.4.5.5 The sideflash formulas are based on the impedance of main-size copper conductors. Other ground wire materials can require additional separation distance.

A.4.5.5.2 The allowable relaxation of the length, l , to the length of the overhead wire for those cases where the overhead wire is supported by a metal mast is applicable only to those cases where the overhead wire is electrically connected to the metal mast. This relaxation is justified by the relative impedance of the metal mast in comparison with that of the overhead wire. It is not the intent that it be applicable for any other mast material or those cases where the overhead wire is not electrically connected to a metallic mast.

The values of n are coefficients related to the division of lightning current among the down conductors provided by the masts supporting the overhead wires. For down conductors (masts) spaced greater than 25 ft (7.6 m) apart, the lightning current is considered to divide among those masts located within 100 ft (30 m) of the point of consideration when calculating the required spacing from the overhead wire(s). Because the n coefficients are related to the division of current, the conductor length of consideration for determination of the value of n is the horizontal run of overhead cable. This should not be confused with the determination of the length, l , of the lightning protection conductor between the nearest grounded point and the point being calculated.

Figure A.4.5.2(a) provides an example of a structure protected by a single overhead wire lightning protection system. For those cases where the length of the overhead wire exceeds 100 ft (30 m), a value of $n = 1$ is applicable. If the

length of the overhead wire is less than 100 ft (30 m), a value of $n = 1.5$ is applicable because there would be two down conductors (masts) separated by more than 25 ft (7.6 m) but less than 100 ft (30 m). To obtain a value of $n = 2.25$, at least two overhead wires with a minimum of three masts would be required. Figure A.4.5.2(b) provides an example of a design where two overhead wires are coursed perpendicular to one another and interconnected at their midpoint. The result is a total of four down conductors located within 100 ft (30 m) of the interconnection point, leading to a value of $n = 2.25$ at that point. Moving away from the midpoint interconnection, the value of n could change. In this example, the value of $n = 2.25$ is valid along the 150 ft (45 m)–long overhead wire up to 60 ft (18 m) from the point of interconnection, but it will revert to $n = 1$ at the point within 15 ft (4.5 m) of the masts. For the 80 ft (24 m)–long overhead wire, the value of $n = 2.25$ is valid for distances up to 25 ft (7.6 m) from the point of interconnection. The value of n will change to $n = 1.5$ for sideflash calculations made within 15 ft (4.5 m) of the supporting masts for this overhead wire.

The value of l is based on the length of the conductor from the point of sideflash consideration to the nearest grounding point. Where metallic masts are used, the masts could be considered as the ground point reference; therefore, the length l could be the length of overhead wire from the point of consideration to the nearest mast. Where nonmetallic masts are used, the value of l includes the length of wire to the nearest grounding system connection (typically the height of the closest mast plus the length of overhead wire to the point of consideration).

A.4.6.2.1 Strike termination devices should be placed as close as practicable to roof edges and outside corners.

A.4.6.3.2.3 Research indicates that the probability of low-amplitude strikes to the vertical side of a structure of less than 60 m (200 ft) in height are low enough that they need not be considered (see IEC 62305-3, *Protection Against Lightning — Part 3: Physical Damage to Structures and Life Hazard*, Section 5.2.3.1). It is suggested that a wall or surface with a slope characterized by an angle from vertical of no more than 15 degrees be considered essentially vertical as it relates to the electric field gradient that could result in the generation of streamers. See Figure A.4.6.3.2.3. IEC 62305-3, Section 5.2.3.2, acknowledges that the rules for the placement of strike termination devices can be relaxed to the equivalent of IEC Lightning Protection Class IV for upper parts of tall structures where protection is provided on the top of the structure. Figure A.4.6.3.2.3 identifies the maximum values of protection angle versus class of lightning protection system based on IEC

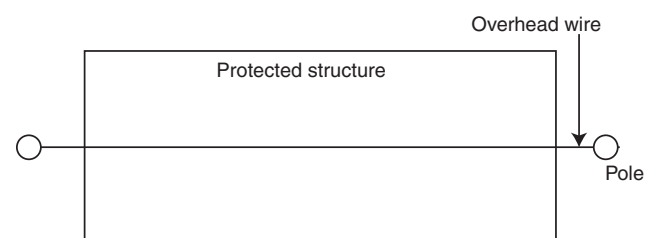


FIGURE A.4.5.2(a) Single Overhead Wire Lightning Protection System.

62305-3. The 15-degree angle from vertical falls well within the limits specified for a Class IV lightning protection system at a height of 60 m (200 ft).

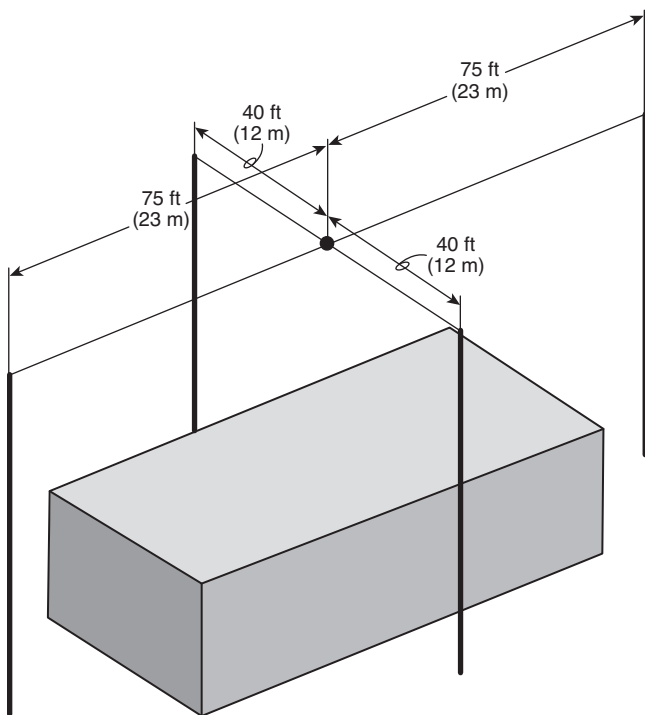
A.4.6.7 Figure A.4.6.7 illustrates dormer protection.

A.4.6.11.2 Strike termination devices should be placed as close as practicable to an outside corner.

A.4.6.13 Examples include windsocks, cranes, window washing davits, and weathervanes where connection of the supporting masts or sockets to the lightning protection system complies with the requirements of Chapter 4 and arcing within the metal object will not damage the protected structure. When lightning attaches to metallic objects with movable parts, there is a possibility that arcing could occur at the point of articulation between the component parts, which could possibly fuse the parts together.

N A.4.7.2.3 The purpose of Figure 4.7.2.4(b) is to provide a graphical representation of the area protected by the upper roof. The reference point is the eave because the criteria in 4.7.3 have been met and, thus, air terminals are not required on the ridge. It has been determined that this area is not susceptible to a direct strike.

N A.4.7.2.4 The purpose of Figure 4.7.2.4(b) is to provide a graphical representation of the area protected by the upper roof. The reference point is the eave because the criteria in 4.7.3 have been met and, thus, air terminals are not required



Note: Four down conductors are within 100 ft (30 m) of intersection of overhead ground wires; $n = 2.25$ at that location.

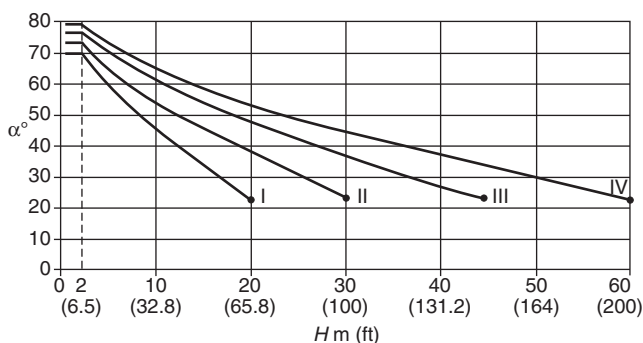
FIGURE A.4.5.5.2(b) Overhead Wire Lightning Protection System Using Multiple Overhead Ground Wires Interconnected Above the Structure.

on the eave. It has been determined that this area is not susceptible to a direct strike.

A.4.7.3.1 Figure A.4.7.3.1 depicts the 150 ft (45 m) rolling sphere method for structures of selected heights up to 150 ft (45 m). Based on the height of the strike termination device for a protected structure being 25 ft (7.6 m), 50 ft (15 m), 75 ft (23 m), 100 ft (30 m), or 150 ft (45 m) aboveground, reference to the appropriate curve shows the anticipated zone of protection for objects and roofs at lower elevations.

A.4.7.3.2 It is recognized that the sides of tall structures are subject to direct lightning strikes. Due to the low risk of strikes to the sides of tall structures and the minimal damage caused by these typically low current-level discharges, the cost of protection for the sides of tall structures normally is not justified.

A.4.8.1 See Figure A.4.8.1 for an example of an additional path for conductor runs over 40 ft (12 m).



Notes:

1. H is the height of air-termination above the reference plane of the area to be protected.
2. The angle will not change for values of H below 1.8 m (6 ft).
3. The figure is based on data from IEC 62305-3, which uses metric values as normative.

FIGURE A.4.6.3.2.3 Maximum Values of Protection Angle Corresponding to the Class of Lightning Protection System. (Source: IEC 62305-3, *Protection Against Lightning — Part 3: Physical Damage to Structures and Life Hazard, Section 5.2.2.*)

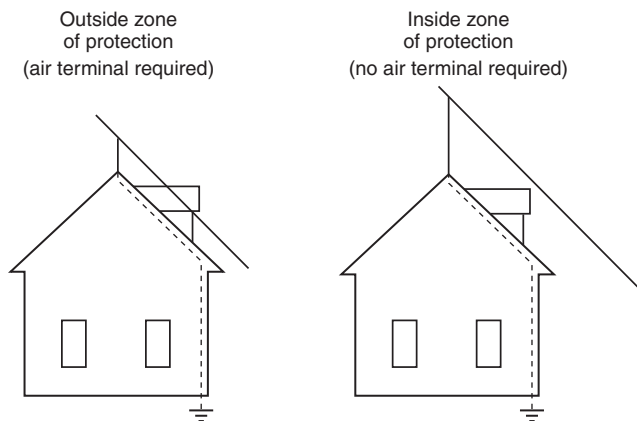


FIGURE A.4.6.7 Dormer Protection.

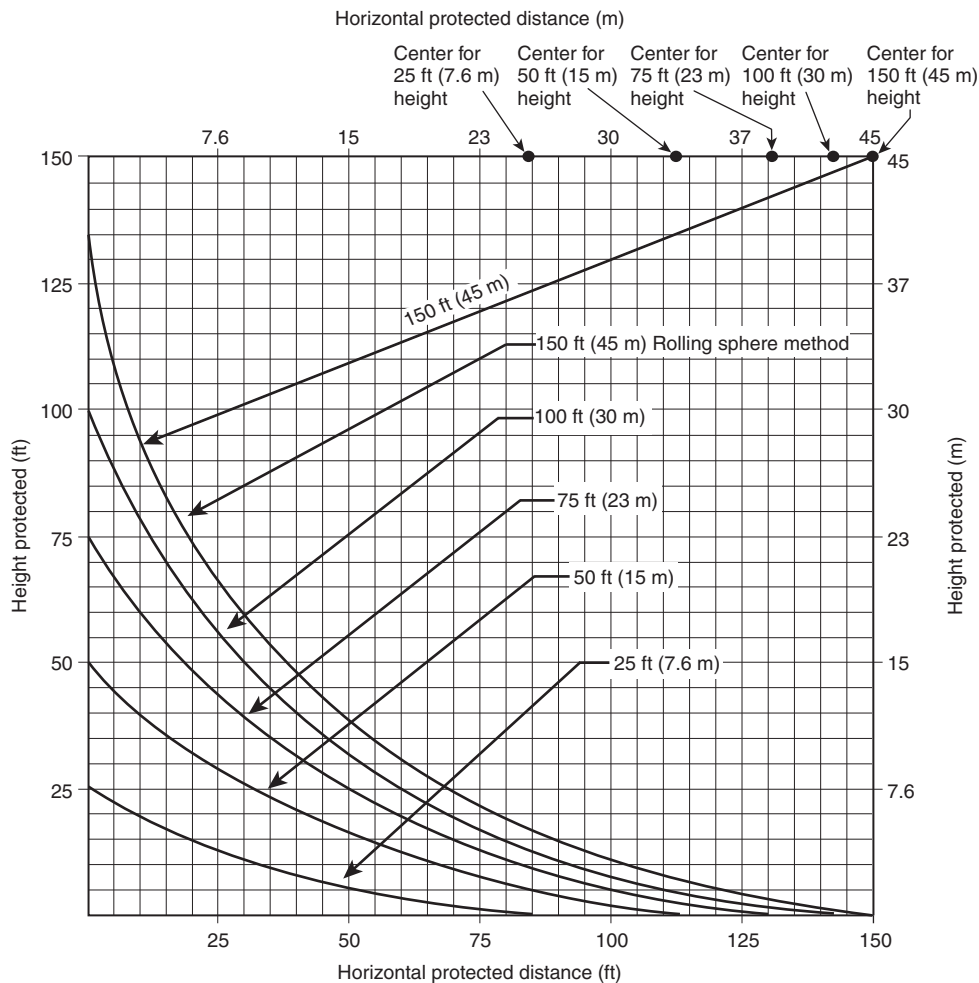


FIGURE A.4.7.3.1 Zone of Protection Utilizing Rolling Sphere Method.

A.4.8.4 “U” and “V” pockets often form at low-positioned chimneys, dormers, or other projections on sloped roofs or at parapet walls and typically have conductor bends with less than a 90-degree interior angle. Additional conductors with downward or horizontal paths eliminate the acute angle and provide the two-way path.

A.4.8.8.1 For example, roofs from 50 ft to 100 ft (15 m to 30 m) in width will require one cross-run conductor, roofs 100 ft to 150 ft (30 m to 45 m) in width will require two cross-run conductors, and so on.

N A.4.8.13 When it is necessary to install down conductors on or within the required bonding distance of steel-reinforced concrete columns in an existing structure, engineering consultation should be sought before piercing the column to access the rebar. Disturbing the concrete could impact the structural integrity of the steel-reinforced concrete column. If the engineer denies the alteration of the concrete column, coursing the down conductor on the column can be used as a means of last resort at the direction of the AHJ.

It is highly recommended that no attempt be made to bond steel-reinforcing cables in post-tensioned concrete.

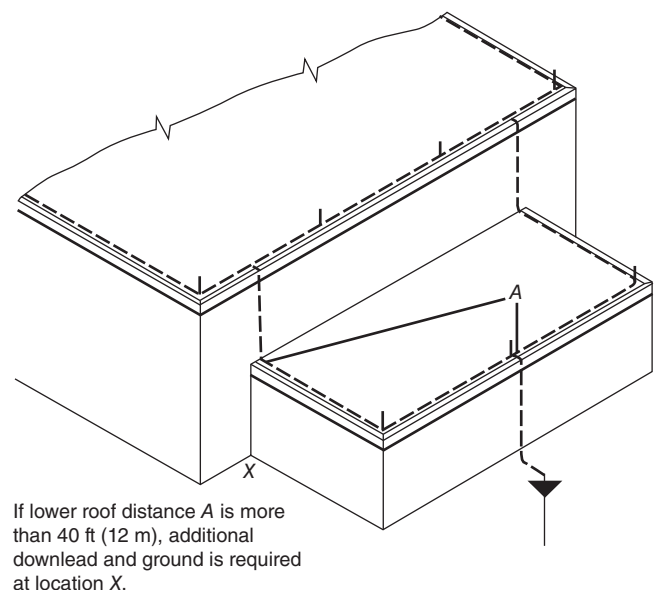


FIGURE A.4.8.1 Additional Path for Conductor Runs Over 40 ft (12 m).

A.4.12.1 Grounding electrodes that will not be accessible after installation should be provided with access wells, hand-holes, or similar means to allow for future inspection, testing, or maintenance of the down conductors and grounding electrodes. (See *Annex D and Annex E for further information on inspection, testing, and maintenance of lightning protection systems.*)

A.4.12.1.1 A grid grounding electrode system meeting the requirements of 4.12.4 is considered equivalent to a ground ring electrode.

N A.4.12.1.1(2) For lightning protection, a single integrated (interconnected) grounding system including lightning protection, power systems, communications systems, and other grounded systems is preferable.

A.4.12.1.6 Consideration of the corrosive environment is necessary for the selection of the appropriate stainless-steel alloy material for the grounding electrode. Research has been presented that warns that stainless steel is very susceptible to corrosion in many soil conditions. Extreme caution should be used and proper soil analysis should be performed where this type of rod is used, which contains detailed information on the grounding of electrical systems.

N A.4.12.2.1 IEEE 142, *Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems*, states that the effect of the ground rod diameter on the resistance of the connection to earth is small and that ground rod diameter is more a function of mechanical strength and rigidity. Driving a ½ in. (12.7 mm) diameter 8 ft (2.4 m) ground rod into sandy soil is easily accomplished. However, driving the same 8 ft (2.4 m) ground rod into rocky soil or 80 ft (24 m) ground rod into sandy soil could require the mechanical strength of a ¾ in. (19 mm) diameter ground rod. The designer should select a ground rod diameter based on sound engineering practices and the success of the selected diameter in previous installations.

A.4.12.2.5 Minimal benefit is gained from the second ground rod if placed closer than the sum of the driven depth of both rods.

N A.4.12.3 Concrete-encased electrodes used in the grounding of lightning protection systems should be limited to those specifically designed for that purpose. The AHJ or its designated representative should confirm and document that the concrete-encased electrode meets the requirements of 4.12.3.

A.4.12.3.2 Field experience has demonstrated that a copper conductor could experience accelerated corrosion at the point where the copper conductor exits the concrete. Concrete and soil composition could have a direct impact on the amount of corrosion, if any. Investigation of existing installations at the proposed site or chemical analysis of the concrete and soil composition would provide a basis to determine if additional corrosion protection is warranted. Each installation should be evaluated to determine the need for any additional corrosion protection. Tinned copper conductors or installation of a nonmetallic sleeve over the conductor where the conductor exits the concrete are two methods that could mitigate corrosion. The nonmetallic sleeve should extend 6 in. (150 mm) on each side of the transition from concrete to soil. See Sections 4.2 and 4.3 for additional requirements.

N A.4.12.4.1 Soil and climate conditions could, due to a lack of moisture or reduction of surface area contact, create high resistance between the local earth and grounding electrode(s),

as well as the associated conductor(s). Where such conditions exist, additional measures should be considered to reduce the resistance of the lightning protection system to remote earth. Some examples are using ground enhancing materials or, where practicable, embedding the ground ring and grounding electrodes below the permanent moisture level of earth at the site.

A.4.12.5 Augmentation of the grounding system specified in 4.12.5 and 4.12.8.2 by the use of one or more radial conductors is recommended. Radial conductors should be sized in accordance with the requirements for main conductors and installed in accordance with 4.12.8.1.

N A.4.12.5.3 Soil and climate conditions could, due to a lack of moisture or reduction of surface area contact, create high resistance between the local earth and radial electrode(s), as well as the associated conductor(s). Where such conditions exist, additional measures should be considered to reduce the resistance of the lightning protection system to remote earth. Some examples are using ground enhancing materials or, where practicable, embedding the radial electrode(s) below the permanent moisture level of earth at the site.

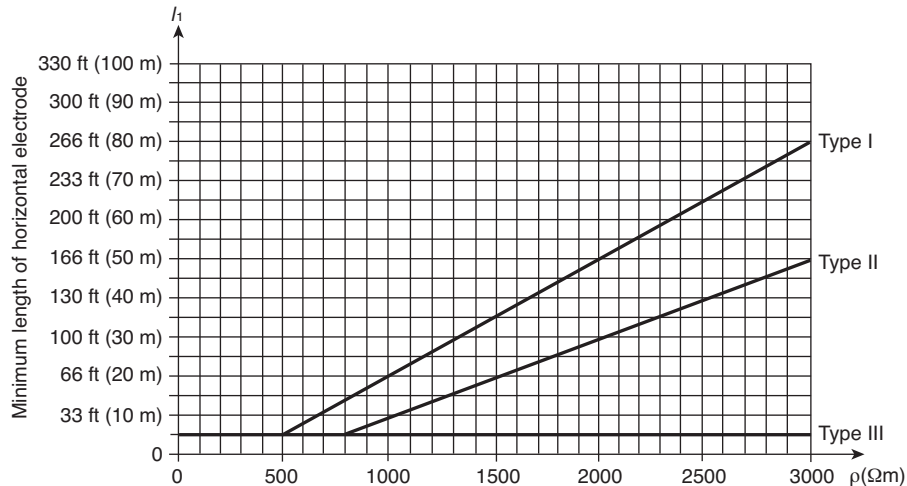
A.4.12.6.1 The 2 ft² (0.18 m²) surface area requirement can be met using a 1 ft² (0.09 m²) plate with both sides in contact with the earth.

N A.4.12.6.2 Soil and climate conditions could, due to a lack of moisture or reduction of surface area contact, create high resistance between the local earth and ground plate electrode(s), as well as the associated conductor(s). Where such conditions exist, additional measures should be considered to reduce the resistance of the lightning protection system to remote earth. Some examples are using ground enhancing materials or, where practicable, embedding the ground plate electrode(s) below the permanent moisture level of earth at the site.

A.4.12.8.1 For those instances in which it is necessary to install the grounding conductor directly on bedrock, it is recommended that main conductor solid strips be utilized. If there are locations along the length of the radial conductor in which there is sufficient soil available for the installation of an earth electrode, the installation of an additional earth electrode is encouraged. When a ground ring electrode is used in an application with insufficient soil cover, radial(s) should be considered to supplement the ground ring electrode to direct the lightning away from the protected area for all locations where property boundaries allow their addition.

A.4.12.8.1.2 For applications involving shallow or no topsoil, the overall earth resistivity could be high, leading to a correspondingly high grounding system resistance. In such applications, the use of radials extending from the structure is encouraged. Where high earth resistivity is encountered, a greater radial length than that specified in 4.12.5 is recommended. It is also recommended that the length of radials used in these applications meet the criteria for Type II lightning protection systems (as defined in IEC 62305-3, *Protection Against Lightning — Part 3: Physical Damage to Structures and Life Hazard*) as shown in Figure A.4.12.8.1.2.

A.4.12.8.3.1 It is preferable that grounding electrodes be located no closer than 24 in. (600 mm) from foundation walls to minimize the probability of damage to the foundation, although this is not always practicable for all applications. For



Note: Minimum length of horizontal electrode denotes the combined total length of all conductors that each electrode comprises.

FIGURE A.4.12.8.1.2 Minimum Length of Each Grounding Electrode Based on Earth Resistivity. (Source: IEC 62305-3, Edition 2, Figure 3.)

reference, IEC 62305-3, *Protection Against Lightning — Part 3: Physical Damage to Structures and Life Hazard*, requires that ring earth electrodes be buried at a depth of at least 18 in. (450 mm) and a distance of approximately 3 ft (1 m) around external walls. Note: The metric equivalent values given in this paragraph are the values cited in the IEC standard.

A.4.13.1 The interconnection of incoming services to the lightning protection system should be performed as near the service entry as reasonable and as direct as practicable through the structure before its interconnection. For larger structures with services entering the structure at different locations, multiple equipotential ground bus bars (EGB) should be considered. In these cases, the interconnection of the multiple EGBs is best accomplished through interconnection with a ground ring electrode.

A.4.13.2 A ground ring electrode conforming to 4.12.4 will be the most efficient method to meet the ground loop conductor requirement.

Δ A.4.13.3 The definitions in *NFPA 70(NEC)* and in this standard for *bonded (bonding)*, *grounded*, *grounding*, and *grounding electrode* are similar. The actual sections in the *NEC* and in this standard that define what constitutes these various items point to differences in application, equipment, and requirements.

Section 250.50 of the *NEC* requires that all electrodes present at each building or structure be bonded together to form the grounding electrode system, which coordinates with the requirements of Section 4.13 of this standard. The differences occur in 250.52 of the *NEC*, which describes grounding electrode devices not shown in Section 4.12. Grounding electrode devices described in 250.52 of the *NEC* but not referenced in this document include the following:

- (1) 250.52(A)(1): 10 ft (3 m) of metallic underground water pipe that extends from the structure in contact with earth.
- (2) 250.52(A)(2): The metal in-ground support structure that is in contact with earth.

- (3) 250.52(A)(3)(2): The concrete-encased electrode described as #4 AWG, which would need to be a main-size conductor per 4.12.3.2.
- (4) 250.52(A)(4): The ground ring electrode not smaller than 2 AWG that is acceptable for Class I but would not be acceptable for Class II (see Table 4.1.1.1.2).
- (5) 250.52(A)(5): Pipe electrodes described in item (a), which are not included, and rod electrodes described in item (b) as zinc-coated steel, which are not covered (see 4.12.2.2).
- (6) 250.52(A)(6): Other listed electrodes, which would need to comply with the various paragraphs of Section 4.12.
- (7) 250.52(A)(7): Plate electrodes, which would need to comply with 4.12.6.
- (8) 250.52(A)(8): "Other local metal underground systems or structures," which are not referenced as grounding electrodes in this standard.

The lightning protection system designer must be familiar with these differences to coordinate interconnection with other building grounding electrodes or the structural grounding electrode system as required by 4.13.3.

Where separate but adjacent buildings or facilities are interconnected directly (not through a utility) by electric, CATV, CCTV, data, or communications wiring, the grounding systems of those buildings should be directly interconnected with a main-size conductor. The need for this interconnection can be eliminated with the use of fiber-optic cable, shielded wire, wire run in grounded metallic conduit, or cascading surge protection [surge arresters, surge protective devices (SPDs), or surge protectors installed at the entrance(s) and exit(s) of buildings or facilities].

A.4.13.5 Section 250.64(F) of the *NEC* identifies locations where grounding electrode conductors and bonding jumpers might be located for common system grounding or bonding. Section 250.104 of the *NEC* details the interconnection of metallic piping, the structural frame, and all separately derived

grounding systems. Subsection 4.13.5 requires one connection to other building grounded systems.

Much like a ground bus bar, the common grounding point for the lightning protection system to other building grounded systems could be distinguishable as located in the first 5 ft (1.52 m) of water pipe, but it could include the entire water pipe system. A common connection point on the structural metallic frame could be apparent, or it could be the extent of the building framework. There is no qualifier (size of pipe or structural metal) in the *NEC*, which is different from this standard. NFPA 780 qualifies the structural metallic frame as a current-carrying part of the system if it meets or exceeds the $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) thickness requirement (see 4.18.1).

Where installation of the electrical grounding system is made in full compliance with the *NEC*, it would be necessary to connect to the lightning protection ground system only once to comply with 4.13.5. The location must be identified by the method used in the *NEC*. In cases where the building structural metallic frame is a part of the lightning protection system or is bonded as required by 4.8.13, it would generally be expected that no additional bonding runs at grade level between systems would be required.

The lightning protection system designer could consider simplification of the system interconnection requirement by specifying one connection to the metallic water pipe system, but in certain cases the use of plastic pipe sections makes this not a part of the building grounding system. In other instances, the building structural frame cannot be exposed for connection of derived systems, so this could not be the method for interconnection of grounded systems, or there might be no metallic frame. The designer could also specify connection of the lightning protection ground system to the electrical grounding electrode, but in the case of buildings served by feeders of branch circuits [see 250.104(A)(3) in the *NEC*], there may or may not be a grounding electrode at a separate building.

Knowledge of the requirements or acceptable allowances in the *NEC* is necessary to determine common bonding of the lightning protection system to other building grounded systems at a single point. If the installed building grounded systems are not in compliance with current *NEC* requirements, common ground bonding must include the interconnection of all building-grounded systems to the lightning protection grounding system. If there is no problem with multiple bonds between various systems or loops, then multiple connections from the lightning protection system will simply improve the overall grounding system quality for the structure.

A.4.13.6.1(2) A method to determine whether grounded media and buried metallic conductors are inherently bonded through construction is to perform a bonding test using test equipment suitable for the purpose. The measured bonding resistance for inherently bonded conductors should typically be in the range of tens of milliohms but should not exceed 200 milliohms.

A.4.13.6.1(6) There could be installations where multiple sections of piping and associated junctions exist between the gas meter/regulator and the entrance of the line to the structure. Such junctions can create increased impedances at frequencies that are associated with overvoltages. Where there is internal piping that could be susceptible to overvoltages, care should be taken to ensure that the interconnection of the light-

ning protection grounding system is made to pipe sections that will not increase the impedance between the pipe and the grounding section. This could be accomplished by connection to the last section of the pipe entering the structure. This interconnection could be made either external or internal to the structure.

Where lightning protection is installed on a structure containing corrugated stainless-steel tubing (CSST), the CSST should be bonded to the lightning protection system in more than one location to lower the probability of arcing. The CSST should be bonded as close to the gas service entrance as possible, at any appliance supplied by the CSST, and at any manifold present in the gas piping system. In addition, the length of any bonding conductor between the CSST gas piping system and the lightning protection grounding system should be as short as possible.

Shorter bonding lengths limit the voltage drop between CSST and other metal components, lowering the probability of the development of an electric arc. Shorter bonding lengths conduct a larger amount of current to ground and reduce voltage differences between the CSST and other metallic components. A bonding length of 25 ft (7.6 m) or less is likely to be effective in preventing arcing due to induced currents.

Bonding clamps should not be installed directly on the CSST or its jacket. The means of bonding the CSST should be installed in accordance with the CSST manufacturer's instructions.

Maintaining a separation between metal bodies (except appliances and bonding connections) and CSST piping could also mitigate arcing. A separation distance of 6 in. (150 mm) or more is recommended.

A.4.13.6.2 Isolating spark gaps can be used to provide the required bond in those cases where galvanic corrosion is a concern or where a direct bond is not allowed by local code. The use of isolating spark gaps is not recommended for those applications where significant follow current can be expected. It is recommended that isolating spark gaps used in this application be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and be rated for the environment in which they are to be installed (e.g., hazardous classified location, direct burial, as applicable). The devices used in the applications should be rated at a maximum discharge current no less than 100 kA, 8/20 μ s [2.5 kV spark overvoltage (U_p)], have an isolating resistance no less than 10^8 ohms, and have a maximum dc spark overvoltage of 500 V.

A.4.14.2 In the case of flat or gently sloping roofs, the roof conductors required by 4.8.7 can be used for achieving roof-level potential equalization. In the case of pitched roofs, the interconnection should be a loop placed at the eave level.

A.4.15 See Annex C for a technical discussion of lightning protection potential-equalization bonding and isolation.

In addition to the bonding of metal bodies, surge protection should be provided to protect power, communication, signal, and data lines from dangerous overvoltages and sparks caused by lightning strikes.

A.4.15.4 An ungrounded metallic body, such as a metal window frame in a nonconducting medium, that is located close to a lightning conductor and to a grounded metal body will influence bonding requirements only if the total of the

distances between the lightning conductor and the ungrounded metal body and between the ungrounded metal body and the grounded metal body is equal to or less than the calculated bonding distance.

- Δ **A.4.16** Metallic antenna masts or supports should not be used as strike termination devices. Thin metallic supports could be damaged and damage to the antenna lead-in conductors will most likely occur. Antenna should be placed in a zone of protection and isolated from the lightning protection system. Communications conductors should not be located near lightning conductors. (See *Section 4.19 for surge protection requirements.*)

A.4.18.3.4 Protecting the base metal with a conductive, corrosion-inhibiting coating, coating the entire bond with a corrosion-inhibiting coating, or other equivalent methods can be utilized.

A.4.19.1 Surge protection alone is not intended to prevent or limit physical damage caused by a direct lightning strike to a facility or structure. Rather, it is intended to defend against the indirect lightning effects imposed upon the electrical services of a structure as part of a coordinated lightning protection system installed in accordance with the requirements of this standard.

Surge currents and their corresponding overvoltage transients can be coupled onto electrical utility feeders in a number of ways. These mechanisms include the magnetic or capacitive coupling of a nearby strike or the more dramatic, but much less frequently used, conductive coupling of a direct cloud-to-ground discharge. These overvoltage transients pose a significant threat to modern electrical and electronic equipment.

A.4.19.2 An SPD responds to surges by lowering its internal impedance so as to divert a surge current to limit the voltage to its protective level — the measured limiting voltage. After the occurrence of surges, the SPD recovers to a high-impedance-state line-to-ground and extinguishes the current-to-ground through the device when the line voltage returns to normal. The SPD performs these functions under normal service conditions, which are specific to the frequency of the system, voltage, load current, altitude (i.e., air pressure), humidity, and ambient air temperature.

-
- Δ **A.4.19.2.3** Permanent failure of electrical and electronic systems can result from conducted and induced surges transmitted to an apparatus via connecting wiring, as well as from the effects of radiated electromagnetic fields impinging directly onto the apparatus itself. Protection of the service equipment and downstream equipment (cascading SPD system) is recommended to reduce such effects.

To reduce the probability of failure of mission-critical equipment or equipment that is critical to life safety, surge protection should also be considered for the branch distribution equipment powering the equipment. IEC 62305-4, *Protection Against Lightning — Part 4: Electrical and Electronic Systems Within Structures*, recommends that the length of system wiring between the point at which the SPD is installed and the equipment being protected be no greater than 30 ft (10 m). Induced voltages can be reintroduced onto long lengths of system wiring, which can add to the protection level (U_p) of the SPD. If the protection level exceeds the withstand voltage level (U_w) of the equipment being protected, the protection afforded by the SPD might not be adequate. In such a case, the installer should locate an SPD closer to the point of utilization of the

equipment. This philosophy extends to the protection of service equipment.

Depending on the presence of other protective measures (e.g., shielding), SPDs should be considered for branch distribution equipment as close as 30 ft (10 m) or more from the service equipment where the electrical equipment fed by the panel equipment is susceptible to overvoltage. Inductive coupling of electrical and magnetic fields can result in surges that can cause damage to susceptible electrical equipment.

- Δ **A.4.19.2.4** Most services to facilities require discrete surge suppression devices to protect against damaging surges. Occasionally, services might be located in an area or manner for which the threat from lightning-induced surges and overvoltage transients is negligible. For example, the requirement in 4.19.2.2 (see also A.4.19.4.2) exempts services less than 100 ft (30 m) in length that are run in grounded metal conduit between buildings requiring surge protection. Other examples where SPDs might not be required at each service entrance are those applications for which fiber optic transmission lines (with no conducting members) are used. The standard recognizes that there might be some exceptions. Consequently, the standard allows for such exceptions to the requirements for surge suppression on electrical utility, data, and other signal lines provided a competent engineering authority determines that the threat is negligible or that the system is protected in a manner equivalent to surge suppression protection.

The allowance in this standard for the exemption of surge suppression protection at specific locations is not intended to provide a broad exemption simply because surge suppression equipment might be inconvenient to install. Rather, this allowance recognizes that all possible circumstances and configurations, particularly those in specialized industries, cannot be covered by this standard.

Determinations made by an engineering authority for exempting the installation of SPDs should focus on the likelihood of lightning activity in a region, the level of damage that might be incurred, and the potential loss of human life or essential services due to inadequate overvoltage protection.

The following four methods of analysis are commonly used for this determination, although other equivalent analysis can be used:

- (1) A risk assessment can be performed in accordance with IEC 62305-2, *Protection Against Lightning — Part 2: Risk Management*, and surge protection requirements can be waived if justified by the assessment.
- (2) A lightning flash density/risk analysis can be performed to determine the frequency of lightning activity in the geographic area of a facility. As a rule of thumb, if the flash density exceeds one flash per square kilometer per year, surge suppression or other physical protection should be considered. Lightning energy can indirectly couple to services at ranges greater than 0.6 mi (1 km) to create potentially damaging overvoltage.
- (3) Plant/facility statistical or maintenance records can be used for risk analysis, if they demonstrate the lack of damage on a service caused by surges, as well as to justify low risk of surge damage in particular systems or facilities.
- (4) A lightning electromagnetic environment analysis can take the threat of an electromagnetic field from a nearby lightning strike and compute the magnitude and rise-time characteristics of transients coupled into services feeding

a structure or facility. Based on the computed threat, SPDs can be sized appropriately or omitted, as warranted. This analysis is typically performed in critical communications facilities and for military applications. Electromagnetic environments for such an analysis can be found in MIL-STD-464C, *Interface Standard Electromagnetic Environmental Effects Requirements for Systems*, and IEC 62305-4, *Protection Against Lightning — Part 4: Electrical and Electronic Systems Within Structures*.

In all cases, the criticality of continued operation, potential hazard to persons and essential services, and consequences of facility damage or shutdown should be considered. If a hazardous condition results from a surge causing temporary shutdown without permanent damage (e.g., due to the disabling of a computer or communication system), then the requirements for surge suppression as articulated by Section 4.19 should not be exempted.

- ▲ A.4.19.2.6 SPDs are typically sized significantly larger than the expected surge level. With service equipment, it is generally agreed that a nominal discharge current (I_n) of 20 kA will provide adequate protection. However, higher ratings that protect against less probable but more powerful lightning events usually provide a better capability to handle multiple strikes and have a longer service life.

Rating the SPD's I_n higher than the minimums in this document is recommended in areas with frequent lightning.

Where installed, SPDs on downstream equipment should have an I_n rating of 10 kA 8/20 μ s or greater per mode.

Where installed, supplementary protection (also called *point of utilization protection*) SPDs should have an I_n rating of 5 kA 8/20 μ s or greater per mode.

- ▲ A.4.19.2.7 The measured limiting voltages of the SPD should be selected to limit damage to the service or equipment protected.

Devices rated in accordance with UL 1449, *Safety for Surge Protective Devices*, reflect that the voltage rating test in this edition utilizes a 3 kA peak current.

- ▲ A.4.19.2.12 Surges can be induced upon any line entering a structure.

Where installed, downstream equipment over 100 ft (30 m) from the service equipment should have L-G or L-N and N-G modes of protection. Additionally, L-L protection is permitted — although this is usually achieved with the L-N modes across two phases.

The following modes of protection can be used to minimize the voltage differences between the individual conductors:

- (1) Line-to-line (L-L) protection places the SPD between the current-carrying conductors in a power system.
- (2) Line-to-neutral (L-N) protection places the SPD between the current-carrying conductors and the grounded conductor (neutral) in a power system.
- (3) Line-to-ground (L-G) protection places the SPD between the current-carrying conductors and the grounding conductor (ground) in a power system.
- (4) Neutral-to-ground (N-G) protection places the SPD between the grounded conductor (neutral) and the grounding conductor (ground) in a power system. This mode of protection is not required at the service equipment

if the neutral-to-ground bond is implemented at this location or within proximity of the point of installation. Thus, in general, an SPD with only L-L and L-N modes of protection might be required at the service equipment.

A.4.19.2.13 The effectiveness of an SPD is based on the impedance of the path to ground. A lower impedance minimizes the voltage differences of conductors attached to SPDs near the service entrance and reduces the chance of arcing or insulation breach. Consequently, it is essential to minimize impedance in this circuit.

- N A.4.19.2.14.2 For information on enclosure environmental ratings, see NEMA 250, *Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1,000 Volts Maximum)*, and Section 110.28 of NFPA 70 (NEC).

- N A.4.19.3 For further information on surge arresters, see IEEE C62.11-2012, *Standard for Metal-Oxide Surge Arresters for Alternating-Current Power Circuits (>1 kV)*, and IEEE C62.22-2009, *Guide for the Application of Metal-Oxide Surge Arresters for Alternating-Current Systems*.

- N A.4.19.3.2 The selection of a properly rated metal arrester should be based on the maximum continuous operating voltage and the magnitude and duration of overvoltage at the arrester location as affected by phase-to-ground faults, system grounding techniques, switching surges, and other causes. A surge arrester should never be installed where the rating of the surge arrester is equal to or less than the maximum continuous phase-to-ground voltage at the power frequency available at the point of application. See the manufacturer's application rules to select the specific arrester for a particular location.

- N A.4.19.4.1 Antennas are considered part of conductive signal, data, and communication services.

- ▲ A.4.19.4.2 Surge protectors should be placed on both ends of external signal, data, and communication lines longer than 100 ft (30 m) that connect pieces of equipment or facilities to protect against surges coupled into the wiring or caused by ground potential differences.

- N A.4.19.4.3 Where surge protectors having a rating of 10 kA 8/20 μ s do not exist, devices complying with the requirements of Section 1.3 should be installed.

- N A.4.19.4.5 Additional information on the surge parameters of isolating transformers can be found in IEEE C62.69-2016, *Standard for the Surge Parameters of Isolating Transformers Used in Networking Devices and Equipment*; IEEE C62.36-2016, *Standard Test Methods for Surge Protectors and Protective Circuits Used in Information and Communications Technology (ICT) Circuits, and Smart Grid Data Circuits*; and IEEE C62.43-2005, *Guide for the Application of Surge Protectors Used in Low-Voltage (Equal to or Less than 1000 Vrms or 1200 Vdc) Data, Communications, and Signaling Circuits*.

A.4.19.4.5.2 The purpose of a surge protector is to equalize conductor-to-conductor and conductor-to-ground potential. While a good ground is important, a good bond is imperative to minimize the damage caused by lightning and power contact or induction. Common mode is a mode of protecting telecommunications lines, data lines, and so forth. This mode places the protector between the signal conductor and the ground. It is analogous to L-G mode in power systems. Differential mode is a mode of protecting telecommunications lines, data lines, and so forth. In this mode, a protector is placed between the

individual signal lines, analogous to the L-L mode of protection in power systems.

A.4.19.4.8 Longer or looped surge protector conductors increase the impedance of the protector circuit. Increasing the lead length serves to increase the pass-through voltage at the point where the protector is wired into signal, data, or communications equipment. Consequently, it is essential to minimize lead length impedance in this circuit.

A.4.19.4.10 Some SPD units are provided with a failure indicator. This feature is recommended because it facilitates maintenance or test procedures. Where used, this indicator should be visible. Periodic inspection or testing of SPDs should be considered as part of building maintenance. (See *NFPA 70B*.)

A.4.19.5.2.1 Differential mode protection should also be provided where practicable.

A.5.8.1 The metal thickness could be less than the dimensions required in Chapter 4. On a nonmetal helipad, a flat metal plate should be permitted to serve as a strike termination device in the landing area if the landing area exceeds 50 ft (15 m) in both dimensions. The minimum exposed area of the plate should be 3 in.² (1950 mm²). The minimum thickness of the plate should be 3/16 in. (4.8 mm). The plate should be installed flush with the helipad surface and exposed to the air. The plate should be connected to the roof lightning protection system with a two-way horizontal or downward path. Conductors connecting the plate to the lightning protection system should be installed flush with or below the helipad surface. Refer to 4.17.3.2 for the bonding requirements.

A.5.8.6 The connection does not provide lightning protection for the parked aircraft. Consideration should be given to relocate the helicopter to a safer location.

A.5.9.4.2 Refer to G.1.1.3 for guidance on installation criteria.

A.6.9 A ground grid located within 50 ft (15 m) of the foundation of a stack and constructed of wires meeting the requirements of this standard for main conductors is a permitted grounding electrode. If the stack is located within 50 ft (15 m) of the grid in all directions, the grid can also serve as the bottom loop conductor required by 6.4.2.

A.7.1 In the structures covered in Chapter 7, a spark that would otherwise cause little or no damage could ignite the flammable contents and result in a fire or explosion. The requirements of this chapter should be considered the minimum acceptable and the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) could find it necessary to supplement these requirements to address specific risks. It is also up to the AHJ as to when any upgrades to existing lightning protection systems are to be accomplished. Flammable vapors can emanate from a flammable liquid [flash point below 100°F (37.8°C)] or a combustible liquid [flash point at or above 100°F (37.8°C)] when the temperature of the liquid is at or above its flash point. Provided the temperature of the liquid remains below the flash point, combustible liquids stored at atmospheric pressure will not normally release significant vapors; since their flash point is defined to be at or above 100°F (37.8°C).

A.7.1.1 This chapter applies to structures that might contain a Class I hazardous (classified) location in all or only portions of a structure. See Article 500 in *NFPA 70* for information on classified locations.

Sections 7.1 and 7.2 provide administrative information and a discussion on the general principles of the protection of structures containing flammable vapors, flammable gases, or liquids that give off flammable vapors. These are only general principles. Specific requirements for specific applications can be found in the sections that follow.

Section 7.3 provides general protective measures and baseline requirements. These requirements apply to all structures except where specified otherwise for specific structures. It covers all the aspects of protection, but all the requirements might not apply to every structure.

Section 7.4 contains requirements for specific classes of structures. Subsection 7.4.1 provides the requirements for operating facilities and other non-storage applications.

Section 7.5 applies to storage tanks under pressure and Section 7.6 addresses aboveground tanks at atmospheric pressure. Section 7.7 addresses earthen containers at atmospheric pressure.

A.7.1.3 It is recommended that consideration be given to upgrading the lightning protection systems to the current requirements not only during new construction but also for reconstructed tanks and any external floating roof tank that undergoes a major roof repair or that has its entire seal system replaced.

A.7.2.1 Hazardous (classified) locations are defined by Chapter 5 of *NFPA 70*.

A.7.2.1.2 Systems should be designed to control the air-to-vapor ratio and maintain that ratio at a level that is not flammable to mitigate ignition.

A.7.2.2 A structure is considered inherently self-protected from the effects of lightning if, by construction and perhaps intended design, components of the installation are sufficient to protect against direct strikes, strikes near a structure, strikes to an incoming line, and strikes near an incoming line. In such cases, additional lightning protection is not required.

In practice, such structures are uncommon due to the presence of structural vulnerabilities that undermine the inherent self-protection. These structural vulnerabilities include, but are not limited to, the following:

- (1) Vents that compromise the seal
- (2) Valves or other appurtenances that provide a location for secondary arcing (see 7.5.2)
- (3) A floating roof that is not sufficiently bonded to the tank shell
- (4) Primary and secondary seals that do not completely prevent the escape of flammable vapors
- (5) Any electronic equipment that requires SPDs
- (6) Any structure that permits the accumulation of flammable vapors

For structures containing flammable gases or vapors, protection should also include procedures to prevent the accumulation of gases or vapors that would require classification of the location where direct strikes or arcing is likely to occur.

A.7.3.3.2 Sparks or damaging impact at the striking point could also be experienced. This should be taken into consideration in the determination of air-termination device locations. For example, US Army Ammunition and Explosives Safety Standard DA-PAM 385-64, *Ammunition and Explosives Safety*

Standards, requires that air terminals on structures containing explosive materials that are located at vents emitting explosives vapors under natural draft be at least 5 ft (1.52 m) higher than the vent. For vents where explosive gases are emitted under forced draft, the air terminals are required to be at least 15 ft (4.5 m) above the vent.

A.7.3.4.3 Where it is not practicable to install down conductors external to the hazardous locations, the following should be considered:

- (1) The down conductor passing through the hazardous location should be continuous (i.e., without splices).
- (2) Where the minimum autoignition temperature of the hazardous environment is less than or equal to 160°F (70°C), the down conductor should be installed in a non-metallic enclosure suitable for the hazardous area.

N A.7.3.6.3 Additional guidance on the installation of surge protection in hazardous (classified) locations can be found in Sections 501.35 and 502.35 of *NFPA 70 (NEC)*.

A.7.3.7 A 20 ft (6 m) diameter or larger vertical cylindrical tank resting on earth or concrete or 50 ft (15 m) diameter or larger vertical cylindrical tank resting on bituminous pavement can be substituted for the ground ring electrode.

A.7.3.7.3(1) It is possible to ground metal tanks by utilizing buried pipe in direct contact with earth. The shorter the distance from the tank to the point of entry to earth, the greater the efficacy of the ground. For a pipe or piping system to be considered a grounding electrode, it should be electrically continuous and buried in direct contact with the earth for at least 10 ft (3 m). Generally, the more pipe that is in contact with earth, the more effective it will be in serving as a grounding electrode. Multiple grounding electrodes are better for grounding metal tanks. If only one ground entry point is available, additional buried length of pipe should be considered. See 4.12.5 for requirements for length of radials.

A.7.4.1 For structures in which a hazardous (classified) location exists in only one part of the structure, a risk assessment utilizing the lightning protection zone (LPZ) concept in accordance with IEC 62305-2, *Protection Against Lightning — Part 2: Risk Management*, is recommended.

The lightning risk assessment provided in Annex L does not currently incorporate the concept of defining multiple LPZs in a structure, but the methodology for the assessment is given below.

An LPZ is characterized by a common set of lightning risk components and not necessarily by walls or other physical barriers. LPZs are generally used to address risks related to a specific area(s) in or around a structure. They are associated with specific characteristics of susceptibility to lightning-related threats. A structure might be characterized as a single zone or it could be divided into multiple risk zones, where each risk zone is defined by a common set of relevant risk components.

The advantage of using the LPZ concept can be seen where only a portion of a larger structure needs to meet the requirements of Chapter 7 and the cost of protecting the structure as a single zone would be greater than mitigating the risk in that zone. Dividing the structure into lightning protection zones enables each zone to be assessed individually to determine whether measures could be taken within that zone to reduce

risk to a tolerable level and not require the measures to be implemented throughout the structure.

In such cases, the characteristics of each zone in the structure must be evaluated, taking into account each risk component relevant to that zone. This enables the most suitable protection measures to be applied to each risk zone, tailoring the protection against lightning for specific applications.

A.7.6.1 For fixed roof tanks (metallic cone or dome) and internal floating roof tanks, there is a possibility of flammable vapors being present at atmospheric vents. If present, flammable vapors can be ignited by a lightning flash. Bonding techniques to prevent discharge between the floating roof and the shell are addressed in API 650, *Welded Steel Tanks for Oil Storage*, Appendix H. Tanks handling low-vapor pressure materials or in-service tanks with properly maintained floating roofs with tight-fitting seals are not likely to have flammable vapors at atmospheric vents unless they are being refilled from empty. In these cases, no further lightning protection is required.

A.7.6.2.1 Sliding contacts between the tank floating roof and tank shell are used to conduct the short and intermediate components of lightning-stroke current.

A.7.6.2.1.2 Refer to API RP 545, *Recommended Practice for Lightning Protection of Aboveground Storage Tanks for Flammable or Combustible Liquids*. Shunts are used for conduction of fast- and intermediate-duration components of lightning-stroke current.

A.7.6.2.1.2(7) API RP 545, *Recommended Practice for Lightning Protection of Aboveground Storage Tanks for Flammable or Combustible Liquids*, recommends a minimum service life of 30 years.

A.7.6.2.2 Fixed contacts, such as bypass conductors, are used for conduction of the intermediate- and long-duration component of lightning-stroke current.

A.7.6.2.2.7 API RP 545, *Recommended Practice for Lightning Protection of Aboveground Storage Tanks for Flammable or Combustible Liquids*, recommends a minimum service life of 30 years.

N A.7.8 The requirements of this section are not applicable to nonmetallic tanks. Considerations for nonmetallic tanks are discussed in Annex N and are not within the scope of Chapter 7.

N A.7.8.3 Consideration should be given to interconnecting the grounding electrode for the site appurtenance discussed in 7.8.3 to the battery grounding system, depending on proximity.

N A.7.8.5 A method of venting in locations where arcing is likely to occur is to install a vapor recovery system or, at a minimum, a horizontal vent line that terminates at least 50 ft (15.2 m) from the tank battery.

All vents, flame arrestors, and thief hatches should be maintained in operating condition. All thief hatches should be closed during normal tank operations.

N A.8.1 An AHJ might elect to omit the installation of a lightning protection system when all of the following conditions are met:

- (1) The facility is served by an approved local lightning warning system as determined by the AHJ, and the lightning warning system permits explosives operations to be terminated before an approaching thunderstorm is within 10 mi (16 km) of the installation. Data by López and Holle, "Lightning Casualties and Damages in the United

States from 1959 to 1994,” suggests that a minimum warning distance of at least 6 mi to 8 mi (9.6 km to 12.8 km) is required to ensure that there is no significant damage from a lightning strike.

- (2) All personnel are evacuated to a shelter providing adequate protection.
- (3) The resulting damage and loss from a lightning strike are acceptable to the AHJ. Annex L provides guidance for performing a facility risk assessment.
- (4) The facility contains only explosive materials that cannot be initiated by lightning and no fire hazard exists, as determined by documented tests and analyses and approved by the AHJ.
- (5) Injury to personnel is not expected; there is minimal risk of economic loss in relation to the structure, its contents, or the surrounding facilities; and the potential resulting damage and loss from a lightning strike is acceptable to the AHJ.

A.8.3.2 The best method to protect extremely sensitive operations from all sources of electromagnetic radiation is to enclose the operations or facility inside a metallic, “Faraday-like” cage. A metallic, Faraday-like cage is an enclosure that comprises a continuous grid of conductors, such that the voltage between any two points inside the enclosure is zero when the cage is immersed in an electrostatic field. A metallic cage or Faraday shield lightning protection system is one in which the protected volume is enclosed by a heavy metal screen (i.e., similar to a birdcage) or continuous metallic structure with all metallic penetrations bonded. The lightning current flows on the exterior of the structure, not through the interior. A Faraday-like shield, which is not an ideal Faraday cage, is formed by a continuous conductive matrix that is properly bonded and grounded.

A freestanding structure that is determined by the AHJ to be a metallic cage or Faraday-like shield might not require either grounding systems or strike termination devices. Use of a strike termination system on these structures provides a preferred attachment point for lightning and could prevent structural damage, such as concrete spall, from direct lightning attachment.

The intent of this type of structure is to prevent the penetration of lightning current and related electromagnetic field into the object to be protected and prevent dangerous thermal and electrodynamic effects of current as well as dangerous sparking and overvoltages for electrical and electronic systems. Effective lightning protection is similarly provided by metallic structures such as those formed by the steel arch or the reinforcing steel in the walls and floors of earth-covered magazines (also referred to as bunkers, huts, or igloos) if the steel reinforcement is bonded together and it meets the bonding resistance of 8.10.7.1.

A.8.3.3 The isolation of the down conductors from the structure will reduce the magnetic field strength in the structure and the probability of a sideflash from a down conductor.

A.8.3.3.2 It is recognized that some partial lightning current will flow on a mast guy.

- N A.8.3.3.5** A significant difference in the resistance to earth of grounding systems can result in a significant difference in current division from an attachment point on the lightning protection system. For lightning protection systems using mast or catenary systems consisting of three or more masts, the use

of a ground ring electrode should be considered. The use of a buried grounding conductor interconnecting systems using two masts should also be considered if there is a significant difference between the value of resistance to earth for the two masts.

A.8.3.5 The spacing dimensions of strike termination devices based upon the 100 ft (30 m) rolling sphere method (RSM), with terminals 12 in. (300 mm) tall, are 25 ft (7.6 m) at the center of the roof, 20 ft (6.1 m) at the roof perimeter, and 24 in. (600 mm) set back from the outer end of roof ridges. For terminals 24 in. (600 mm) tall, the dimensions increase to 35 ft (12 m) at the center of the roof, 20 ft (6.1 m) at the roof perimeter, and 24 in. (600 mm) set back from the outer end of roof ridges.

- N A.8.4.2** Section 4.12.2.5 allows for the use of copper-clad steel and stainless-steel ground rods; however, AHJs should understand that installation of these rods in some conditions and locations can greatly affect their serviceability over the expected lifecycle of the lightning protection system. Soil conditions with rocky or larger gravel concentrations can abrade copper cladding, exposing the steel core to corrosive elements that can greatly diminish the performance and effectiveness of the electrode over time. Acidic and corrosive soil conditions can adversely affect the lifespan of stainless-steel grounding electrodes.

- N A.8.4.2.4** A conductor with a cross-sectional area of 105,000 circular mils ensures that cables can remain serviceable over the lifecycle of the system.

- N A.8.4.2.5** The effectiveness of concrete-encased electrodes can be drastically influenced by their design and implementation. It is recommended that AHJs fully understand the design characteristics that influence the effectiveness of concrete-encased electrodes as they pertain to their applicability in conducting lightning energies into the earth. The design requirements of 4.12.3.1 and 4.12.3.2(1) and 4.12.3.2(2) are particularly influential in the effectiveness of the concrete-encased electrode’s ability to perform and function and to transfer lightning energies into the earth and should be confirmed.

A.8.5.4 Welding includes exothermic welding.

A.8.5.5.1 All internal metallic door frames (and metallic doors through bonding to the frames) should be considered for bonding to the ground ring electrode.

A.8.5.7 Hazardous arcing can occur between rail cars and structural members, bollards, metallic barricades, etc., where the rail cars are stored or unloaded inside a structure. Bonding of the track to the structure or its grounding system at the entry point to the structure can maximize the safe separation distance between explosive-laden rail cars and grounded structural components.

- N A.8.7.1.1** The AHJ should determine the necessity of the placement of strike termination devices other than headwalls, ventilators, or other metal bodies. When an earth-covered magazine can provide metallic (Faraday-Like) cage protection, as defined in 8.3.2, non-metal bodies that do not penetrate the structure can be omitted from consideration for strike termination protection.

A.8.7.2 The purpose of the lightning protection system requirements expressed in 8.7.2 is to protect the explosives positioned on these structures from being ignited by direct lightning strikes. Open-air explosives staging areas on a wharf

will generally require lightning protection from a mast or catenary system. A ship alongside an explosives-handling wharf is capable of providing a zone of protection for a section of the explosives-handling wharf and could be considered to provide a zone of protection for an explosives staging area.

A.8.7.2.4 The conductors between the deck-level potential equalization network and grounding electrodes should be provided at or near the location of lightning protection masts or catenary cables where practicable.

A.8.7.2.5.3 The grounding electrodes should be submerged below the 100-year drought water level.

Δ A.8.7.4 ISO containers meeting the requirements of ISO 1496, *Series 1 freight containers — Specification and testing — Part 1: General cargo containers for general purposes*, are sometimes used for temporary storage of various explosives materials, such as small arms in ammo boxes, various weapons system configurations in shipping containers, commercial explosives, fireworks, and so forth. Because the metal frame of a properly maintained ISO container does not meet the metal thickness requirement for strike termination devices, there could be burn-through caused by some strikes. The metal frame will provide some protection from lightning electromagnetic effects and the surface area contact of the superstructure on the local earth will provide some impedance to earth. These provide protection against the effects of lightning for some configurations and sensitivity of contents, but not all. In some cases, it might be necessary to provide strike termination devices, additional bonding, and grounding of the ISO container. Whether the ISO container is to be supplemented by lightning protection is a decision for the AHJ to make based on a risk assessment of the sensitivity of the container's contents.

A.8.9 The effectiveness of any lightning protection system depends on its installation, its maintenance, and the testing methods used. Therefore, all installed lightning protection systems should be properly maintained. Proper records of maintenance and inspections should be maintained on each facility to ensure adequate safety. These records are part of the lightning protection requirements and should be maintained.

N A.8.10.6.3 The manufacturer's installation instructions or product markings might provide additional criteria or guidance on how and when to inspect, test, and maintain equipment providing surge protection.

A.8.10.7 The instrument used in earth resistance testing should be capable of measuring 0 ohms to 50 ohms, ± 10 percent. The instrument used to measure bonding resistance should be capable of measuring 0 ohms to 10 ohms, ± 10 percent.

A.8.10.7.8 Assistance in determining a qualified person can be found in NFPA 70E.

A.9.1 Modern turbine blades are typically constructed of composite materials such as carbon or glass-reinforced plastic. Some parts and discrete components such as mounting flanges, balancing weights, hinges, bearings, wires, electrical wiring, and springs are made of metal. Lightning strikes blades that have metallic and nonmetallic components. The technical challenge in designing lightning protection of wind turbine blades is to conduct the lightning current safely from the strike attachment point to the hub in such a way that the formation of a lightning arc inside the blade is avoided. This can be achieved by diverting the lightning current from the strike attachment

point along the surface to the blade root, using metallic conductors either fixed to the blade surface or inside the blade.

Typically for blades up to 60 ft (18 m) long, receptors at the tip of the blade are adequate. However, it might be necessary for longer blades to have more than one receptor to obtain the desired interception efficiency. Protection of the blades is provided by the blade manufacturer and is typically an integral part of the blade.

Any wiring for sensors placed on or inside blades should be protected via bonding to the down conduction system. Wiring should be either shielded cables or placed in metal tubes. The cable shield or metal tube should be placed as close as possible to the down conductor and bonded to it.

A.9.1.2 This protection is addressed by specific manufacturer product approval standards.

N A.9.2.5 A hub is also referred to as a spinner.

A.9.2.6 A tubular metal tower, as predominantly used for large wind turbines, usually fulfills the dimensions required for down conductors stated in NFPA 780 and IEC 62305-3, *Protection Against Lightning — Part 3: Physical Damage to Structures and Life Hazard*, and can be considered an effective electromagnetic shield.

A.9.4.1 Consideration should be given to design requirements for power generation facility grounding, including sizing of conductors for fault currents and requirements for touch and step potential.

A.9.4.2 Additional vertical or horizontal grounding electrodes could be used in combination with the ground ring electrode.

A.10.1.2 A lightning protection system does not afford protection if any part of the watercraft contacts a power line or other voltage source while in water or on shore. A lightning protection system lowers but does not eliminate risk to watercraft and its occupants.

A.10.2.2.4 Carbon fiber fittings, including masts, should be isolated electrically from the lightning conductor system. Since carbon fiber is a conductor, sideflash risk is increased in the vicinity of carbon fiber composite (CFC) structures, especially near the water. The use of CFC reinforcement in areas such as chainplates is to be avoided.

A.10.3.1 The techniques described in Chapter 10 should also be applied to watercraft for the placement of strike termination devices and determining the zone of protection.

A.10.3.2.1 Where a standing person is not covered by the zone of protection, a warning to this effect should be included in the owner's manual.

For retrofit applications and those applications where a sufficient zone of protection cannot be provided, the zone of protection of the lightning protection system should be identified and provided to the user of the watercraft.

A.10.4.1.1 See Table 9.12.5(a) of NFPA 302 for minimum strand sizes for watercraft conductors. Main conductors of greater cross-sectional area as discussed in Section 4.8 provide a greater degree of safety.

A.10.4.1.3 If a metal with the area given by the equations in 10.4.1.3 is subject to the lightning heating (action integral)

required to raise the temperature of a copper conductor with an area of 0.033 in.² (21 mm²) from a nominal temperature of 77°F (298 K) to the melting point of copper, then its temperature would be raised to the melting point of the metal. Values for silicon bronze and stainless steel are given in Table A.10.4.1.3(a) and Table A.10.4.1.3(b).

A.10.4.1.4 The area of a conductor of uniform cross-section that has the same resistance as a copper conductor of area A_{Cu} is given by the following equation:

[A.10.4.1.4]

$$A = \frac{\rho}{\rho_{Cu}} A_{Cu}$$

where:

A = cross-sectional area

ρ = resistivity of alternative metal (Ω m)

ρ_{Cu} = resistivity of copper (1.7×10^{-8} Ω m)

A_{Cu} = 21 mm² for a main conductor

Using the parameters in Table A.10.4.1.3(a) and Table A.10.4.1.3(b), the areas are 0.49 in.² (315 mm²) for silicon bronze and 1.8 in.² (1200 mm²) for stainless steel.

A.10.4.1.6 Routing lightning conductors near the outer surface of the hull lowers the risk of internal sideflashes forming between the lightning conductors and other conducting fittings and of external sideflashes forming between conducting fittings and the water. Routing lightning conductors externally is also more consistent with the layout recommended for buildings wherein air terminals, down conductors, and grounding electrodes are located on the outside of the building. However, in the case of internal conducting fittings being very close to the water, such as a keel-stepped mast, a grounding electrode should be provided as close as is practicable to the portion of the fitting that is closest to the water.

A.10.4.1.7 All lightning conductors should be routed as far as possible from the water, and especially the waterline, to minimize the risk of an external sideflash forming between the lightning conductor and the water. Similarly, conducting fittings, electronic equipment, and electrical wiring should be located as far as possible from the water.

A.10.4.2.3 Using the parameters in Table A.10.4.1.3(a) and Table A.10.4.1.3(b), the required areas are 0.052 in.² (33 mm²) for silicon bronze and 0.075 in.² (48 mm²) for stainless steel.

A.10.4.2.4 Using the same equation as in A.10.4.1.4, with 0.013 in.² ($A_{Cu} = 8.3$ mm²) as the area for a copper bonding conductor, the required areas are 0.19 in.² (125 mm²) for silicon bronze and 0.73 in.² (470 mm²) for stainless steel.

A.10.4.2.7 Large metallic masses include metal cabinets that enclose electronic equipment, tanks, handrails, lifeline stanchions, engines, generators, steering cables, steering wheels or tillers, engine controls, metallic arches, and bow and stern pulpits.

A.10.4.3.1 The function of a loop conductor is to conduct lightning current around the outside of a watercraft while minimizing the risk of a sideflash to the water or to the metallic structures and personnel in the vessel. In the absence of conducting fittings or occupied areas, it is preferable to place the loop conductor as high as possible above the waterline to minimize the risk of a sideflash between the loop conductor and the water. If conducting fittings or crewed areas exist near the loop conductor, it is preferable to place the loop conductor between the vulnerable area and the water.

A.10.4.3.2 Typical applications are sailboat masts and amidships towers. A mast in a sailboat could require a masthead air terminal or the tip of a metal mast could act as an air terminal. If the mast material is aluminum and its cross-sectional area exceeds the requirements in 10.4.1.2, then the mast itself is permitted to act as an air terminal and main conductor. For other mast materials, such as carbon fiber composite (CFC) and wood, a separate conductor is required for the main conductor.

Connections to the loop conductor should be made via two main conductors, typically one to port and one to starboard. In determination of the path in each case, conductor bends (*see 4.8.5*), and total conductor length should be minimized and “U” or “V” pockets (*see 4.8.4*) avoided wherever possible. Conductor paths that are long and tortuous result in larger voltages being induced between the ends of the conductor.

For watercraft with multiple masts or towers, the main conductor for each should be connected to the loop conductor by two main conductors in a similar fashion.

Table A.10.4.1.3(a) Areas for Main Conductor Not Containing Electrical Wiring (inch-pound units)

Metal	C_p (Btu/lb _m °F)	D (lb _m /in. ²)	ρ (Ω in.)	MP (°F)	Area (in. ²)
Silicon bronze	0.086	0.32	9.95×10^{-6}	1981	0.13
Stainless steel	0.122	0.29	3.74×10^{-5}	2781	0.19

Table A.10.4.1.3(b) Areas for Main Conductor Not Containing Electrical Wiring (metric units)

Metal	C_p (J/kg ⁻¹ K ⁻¹)	D (kg/m ³)	ρ (Ω m)	MP (K)	Area (mm ²)
Silicon bronze	360	8800	2.55×10^{-7}	1356	85
Stainless steel	510	7930	9.6×10^{-7}	1800	125

A.10.4.4.1 A main conductor is designed to conduct all of the lightning current. Close to the water, and especially inside the hull below the waterline, the optimum direction for a main conductor is perpendicular to the hull directly inboard of the grounding electrode in contact with the water. A bonding conductor is intended to conduct the relatively small currents required to equalize potentials between conducting fittings and the lightning protection system. The optimum orientation for bonding conductors is parallel to the water surface and the best location is as far from the water surface as is practicable.

A.10.4.5.2 Requirements for connector fittings are given in Section 4.11. Where practicable, these requirements should be followed for connections in a watercraft lightning protection system. Conductor connections should be of the bolted, welded, high-compression, or crimp type. The bolt securing the connector can be utilized as either a main or bonding conductor subject to the requirements regarding cross-sectional area defined in Section 10.4.

A.10.4.6.2 The area of a conductor of uniform cross-section that has the same resistance per unit length as a main conductor is given by the equation in A.10.4.1.4. For connecting a main conductor, the areas are 0.49 in.² (315 mm²) for silicon bronze and 1.8 in.² (1200 mm²) for stainless steel. For connecting a bonding conductor, the required areas are 0.19 in.² (125 mm²) for silicon bronze and 0.73 in.² (470 mm²) for stainless steel.

Equating resistances for a copper conductor of area A_{Cu} , resistivity ρ_{Cu} , and length L_{Cu} and a metal connector of area A , resistivity ρ , and length L gives a maximum allowable length for the metal connector as follows:

[A.10.4.6.2]

$$L = L_{Cu} \frac{A}{A_{Cu}} \frac{\rho_{Cu}}{\rho}$$

where:

L = length of metal connector
 L_{Cu} = length of copper conductor
 A = area of metal connector
 A_{Cu} = area of copper conductor
 ρ_{Cu} = resistivity of copper conductor
 ρ = resistivity of metal connector

The length is the same for both main and bonding conductors and is 6.5 in. (165 mm) for silicon bronze and 2.5 in. (63.5 mm) for stainless steel when $L_{Cu} = 24$ in. (600 mm).

A.10.5.2.1 In order to allow for main conductors to be routed externally to vulnerable areas (as described in 10.4.1.6) and to reduce the risk of external sideflashes from the lightning conductors, grounding electrodes should be located as close to the waterline as is practicable. Where an onboard fitting is below the waterline and close to the water, an additional supplemental grounding electrode is advisable in the vicinity of the fitting.

A.10.5.2.3 Seacocks are particularly susceptible to damage and leaking after a strike and should be inspected after all suspected strikes.

A.10.5.4.1 A supplemental grounding electrode can be painted or covered with a thin coating [<0.04 in. (<1 mm)] but should not be encapsulated in fiberglass.

A.10.5.5 A spark gap or gas discharge tube (GDT) might be desirable to reduce corrosion in the presence of leakage currents in the water and could reduce galvanic corrosion. However, using a spark gap to isolate an immersed conductor from the water can increase the risk of a ground fault current bypassing any ground fault protection device. Hence, a hazardous current can be inadvertently introduced into the water. For this reason, measures should be taken to ensure that loose electrical connections cannot contact any part of the isolated grounding electrode. A spark gap should not be used where there is the possibility of ignitable vapors or personal hazards.

Δ A.11.1.1 Chapter 11 pertains to lightning protection of airfield lighting systems. These systems are installed underground in both paved (e.g., full-strength pavement and shoulder pavement) and unpaved areas. The protected components include in-pavement fixtures, elevated fixtures, airfield signs, underground power systems, communications systems, control and signal circuits, and components of runway, taxiway, and apron lighting systems. These systems are installed in the portions of an airport that encompass the approach, departure, landing, takeoff, taxiing, and parking areas for aircraft. These areas include runways, taxiways, and other parts of an airport used for taxiing, takeoff, and landing of aircraft; loading ramps; and parking areas exclusive of building-mounted helipads, approach light structures, and antennas. This chapter could also apply to other areas with airfield lighting systems.

There are two generally accepted methods for providing lightning protection for airfield lighting circuits: equipotential and isolation. The equipotential method, which is described in 11.4.2.6.1, is shown in Figure A.11.1.1(a). The isolation method, which is described in 11.4.2.6.2, is shown in Figure A.11.1.1(b). The two methods should not be employed on a single circuit. The designer should select the installation method based on sound engineering practices and the success of the selected method in previous installations.

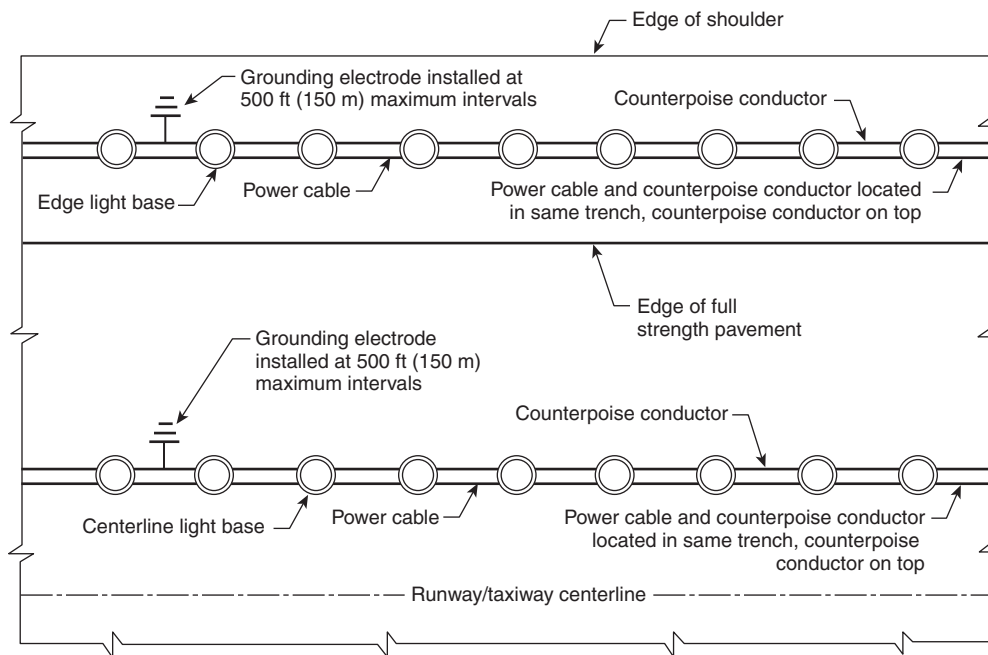
A.11.1.2 Aboveground items, such as elevated support structures, can be protected in accordance with Chapter 4.

A.11.2.1 A typical airfield lighting series (current-driven) circuit is powered by a constant current regulator (CCR) or equivalent power supply. Current is the same at all points in the series circuit. The output voltage is directly proportional to the load and output current step. The CCR output (primary circuit) is normally ungrounded. The internal overcurrent protection of the CCR or an equivalent power supply monitors the actual output current. Series airfield lighting circuit overcurrent protection does not rely on a low impedance return path or ground connection for proper operation.

The installation of an equipotential airfield lighting counterpoise system on a series circuit also provides equipotential bonding between all elements of the airfield lighting system. The airfield lighting counterpoise system maintains all interconnected components at earth potential and protects personnel from possible contact with energized metallic light bases, mounting stakes, or fixtures.

The principles used to protect airfield lighting systems from lightning are also applicable to the protection of parallel (voltage-powered) circuits, control circuits, communications, and signal circuits.

The parallel (voltage-powered) circuit is similar to the typical alternating current system used in homes and in industry.



Notes:

1. The counterpoise conductors are shown parallel to the raceways or cables being protected for graphic simplicity. The counterpoise conductors are actually installed above and centered over the raceways or cables to be protected in accordance with 11.4.2.6.1. (See Figure 11.4.2.6.1.)
2. Grounding electrodes can be any of those described in 11.4.5.2. Ground rods are typically used for this application.

FIGURE A.11.1.1(a) Equipotential Method.

Voltage is nominally the same at all points in the parallel circuit. The parallel circuit current varies according to the load.

Parallel circuits must be installed in accordance with *NFPA 70*. The required equipment grounding conductor must be sized in accordance with Article 250 of *NFPA 70*. Equipment grounding conductors for parallel circuits should be routed within the same raceway or cable with the parallel circuit conductors or in close proximity to direct buried conductors and cables to reduce the overall circuit impedance, allowing expedited operation of the overcurrent device.

The equipment grounding conductor must be bonded to each metallic airfield lighting component and the airfield lighting vault building ground system in accordance with *NFPA 70*. All metallic airfield lighting components must be bonded to the equipment grounding conductor.

The lightning protection system for a parallel (voltage-powered) airfield lighting circuit should be installed in the same manner as a lightning protection system for a series (current-driven) airfield lighting circuit.

A.11.2.4 A lightning protection system for airfield lighting circuits could still be required for the conditions described in 11.2.4 to comply with funding agency requirements. The AHJ could also require compliance with this standard for conditions described in 11.2.4.

A.11.3.2 The function of an airfield lighting counterpoise system is to provide a preferred, low-impedance path for lightning energy to earth.

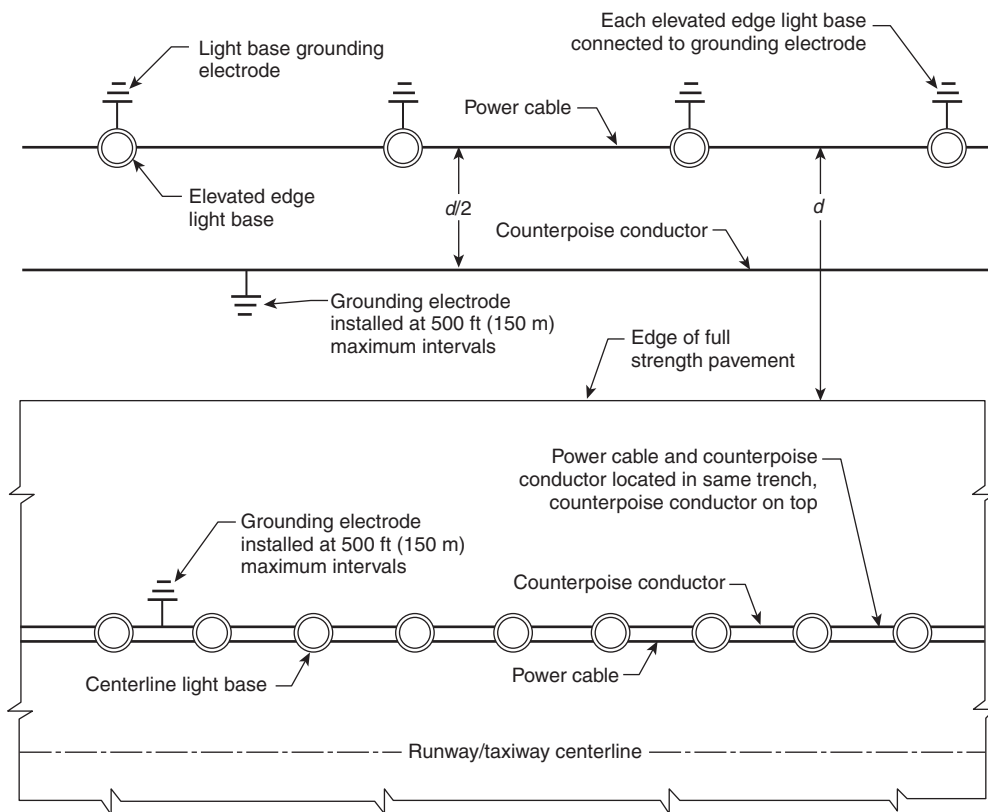
A.11.4.1.1 The copper counterpoise conductor size should be determined by the Engineer of Record based upon sound engineering practices. A 2 AWG bare, solid copper counterpoise conductor is recommended.

The following factors should be evaluated when considering a larger size counterpoise conductor:

- (1) The airport's ability to maintain airport operations after an airfield lighting circuit or system failure
- (2) Accessibility of the copper counterpoise conductor for testing or repair (e.g., if the counterpoise conductor is installed in or under pavement)
- (3) Availability of qualified persons to perform airfield lighting system repairs
- (4) Life cycle cost of the larger size counterpoise conductor, including consideration of counterpoise conductor replacement prior to the end of an expected 20-year life
- (5) Results of a lightning risk assessment performed in accordance with Annex L
- (6) Past performance of the airfield lighting counterpoise system at the airport or geographic area

The AHJ can determine and approve the size of the copper counterpoise conductor.

A.11.4.1.2 Corrosion, oxidation, chemical reaction, and electrolysis can all be considered adverse effects on a bare copper counterpoise conductor. Most metals are subject to some form of corrosion, oxidation, chemical reaction, or electrolysis. Where the history of grounding systems (buried conductors, buried metallic objects) in the area is not known, a soil resistivity and soil pH profile in conjunction with the consultation of a materials/corrosion specialist could be necessary to properly



Notes:

1. Provide a second trench for the edge light counterpoise conductor. Normally, the edge light counterpoise conductor is routed around the light base a minimum of 12 in. (300 mm) toward the full strength pavement. (See Figure 11.4.2.6.2.)
2. The centerline light counterpoise conductor is shown parallel to the raceway or cable being protected for graphic simplicity. The centerline light counterpoise conductor is actually installed above and centered over the raceway or cable to be protected in accordance with 11.4.2.6.1. (See Figure 11.4.2.6.1.)
3. Grounding electrodes can be any of those described in 11.4.5.2. Ground rods are typically used for this application.

▲ FIGURE A.11.1.1(b) Isolation Method for Elevated Edge Lights Installed in Turf or Stabilized Soil.

design the grounding system. If stainless steel is to be used it should be a minimum of 154,000 CM (78 mm²) corresponding to approximately $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (9.5 mm) diameter.

▲ A.11.4.2.4 A Chapter 4-compliant lightning protection system and SPDs can be installed at the airfield lighting vault or another airfield lighting circuit power source.

The need for an airfield lighting vault building lightning protection system, SPDs, or surge arresters should be determined by the engineer of record based on sound engineering practices. Lightning protection systems, SPDs, and surge arresters are recommended for high-priority airfield lighting systems and airfield lighting systems installed in areas with a lightning flash density greater than one flash per square kilometer per year.

The criteria in A.11.4.1.1 can be used to determine if airfield lighting field circuits should be provided with surge arresters.

A lightning risk assessment performed in accordance with Annex L can be used to determine if the airfield lighting vault building or equivalent electrical equipment protective struc-

ture should be provided with a lightning protection system and SPDs in accordance with Chapter 4.

The AHJ can determine and approve the need for the airfield lighting vault building or equivalent electrical equipment protective structure lightning protection system, SPDs, and airfield lighting circuit surge arresters.

A.11.4.2.6 The two methods are not listed in preferred order.

▲ A.11.4.2.6.1.2 Airfield pavement systems design is an intricate engineering solution involving a large number of complex variables. Operating aircraft and pavement systems interact with each other. This interaction must be addressed by the pavement design process. Structural designs of airfield pavement systems include the determination of the overall pavement system thickness to achieve the final design objectives. Airfield pavement systems are normally constructed in courses or layers.

Many factors influence the pavement system layer thicknesses required to provide satisfactory pavement system design. Two key components that affect the structural design of the

pavement system are the type of pavement and the load-bearing capacity of the supporting materials.

A typical pavement system design might consist of the following layers:

- (1) Conditioned and compacted earth fill and subgrade below the pavement system (typically 100 percent compaction required)
- (2) Enhanced sub-base course material, including additional layering, or enhanced existing subgrade
- (3) Pavement base course (flexible or semi-rigid materials to support the pavement surface materials)
- (4) Final pavement surface, either hot mix asphalt (HMA), a flexible pavement typically installed in multiple layers, or Portland cement concrete (PCC), a rigid pavement typically installed in one layer

The thickness of each of the overall pavement layers is determined based on the structural requirements of the pavement system based on existing conditions, aircraft sizes and weights, number of aircraft operations, environmental factors, and other features.

The airfield lighting system is incorporated into the airfield pavement system. The design of the depth and height of the various airfield lighting system components, including light bases, light base accessories, conduits, and counterpoise conductors, must be adjusted to integrate the components into the varying pavement system layer thicknesses. Although reasonable effort should be made to comply with the 8 in. (200 mm) requirement contained in 11.4.2.6.1.1, it is for these reasons that the variation described in 11.4.2.6.1.2 is necessary.

A.11.4.2.6.1.3 Where existing pavement cannot be cut, raceway is typically installed under the pavement by the directional bore, jack and bore, or other drilling method. Where raceway is installed by a drilling method, it is permissible to install the counterpoise conductor concurrent with the drilling method raceway, external to the raceway or sleeve. This could result in the counterpoise conductor being wrapped around the raceway in an unknown position relative to the raceway or cable being protected. The installation of the counterpoise conductor is required to maintain the equipotential bonding of the overall lightning protection system. The lightning protection afforded by this process is reduced; however, this manner of installation is more effective than omission of the counterpoise conductor. Where multiple directional bores are necessary, ensure each end of the counterpoise conductor is associated with its respective directional bore. This method is not recommended for projects where the pavement is being overlaid or replaced. Where pavement is being overlaid or replaced, the counterpoise conductor should be installed prior to any paving operations in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 11.

A.11.4.2.6.1.6 The area of protection is considered to be an equilateral triangular cross-sectional area (triangular prism) with the apex located at the center of the counterpoise conductor, having its two sides formed by a 45-degree angle from vertical. The width of the protected area is twice the height of the counterpoise conductor above the raceway or cable being protected. Figure A.11.4.2.6.1.6 shows a typical area of protection application.

A.11.4.2.6.1.8 The intent of 11.4.2.6.1.8 is that all metallic lighting components, including light bases, fixtures, and manhole cover/frames, be bonded to the counterpoise conductor. The phrase “output side of the constant current

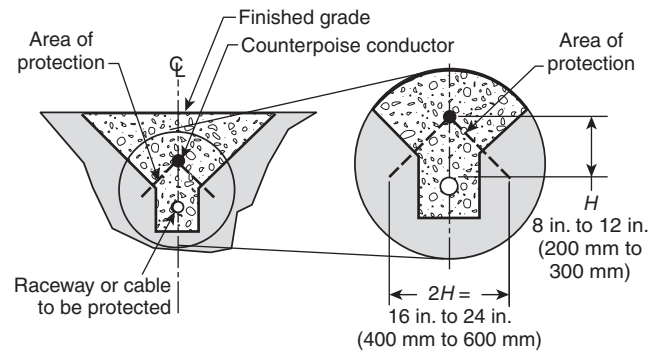


FIGURE A.11.4.2.6.1.6 Area of Protection.

regulator (CCR) or other power source” refers to the field circuit. The input power to the CCR or airfield lighting power source should be provided with an equipment grounding conductor (EGC) in accordance with *NFPA 70*.

A.11.4.2.6.2 Paragraph 11.4.2.6.2 addresses items installed in turf adjacent to the full-strength pavement edge. Items within 15 ft (4.6 m) of the full-strength pavement edge can be considered adjacent to the full-strength pavement edge for the purpose of this paragraph. The exact routing of the counterpoise conductor could be subject to field conditions such as the presence of rocks or other obstructions. The counterpoise conductor should be routed as close as practicable to the midpoint between the full strength pavement edge and the item being protected.

Lightning strikes often occur on the pavement, and the counterpoise conductor provides a method of dissipating the energy as it moves from the pavement surface to the earth.

A.11.4.2.6.2.2 The light base grounding electrode can be installed in the same excavation as the light base or mounting stake. If a ground rod is used as the light base grounding electrode, the ground rod can be installed exterior to the light base or installed within the light base through a hole provided by the manufacturer in the bottom of the light base.

A.11.4.3.1 Multiple raceways in a common assembly are also known as duct banks. Paragraph 11.4.3.1 addresses duct banks and individual raceways or cables installed in a common excavation but separated by a greater-than-normal distance. For example, a control circuit and an airfield lighting series circuit could be installed in a common trench but separated by 12 in. (300 mm) or more to prevent interference on the control circuit.

A.11.4.3.1.1 Standard trigonometric functions can be used to calculate the width of the area of protection with the counterpoise conductor at a specified height above the raceway or cable being protected. A conservative design would have an overlap of adjacent areas of protection.

A.11.4.4.1 To maintain all counterpoise conductors at the same potential, all counterpoise conductors should be bonded at all crossings and intersections. Crossing counterpoise conductors could be at different elevations. All counterpoise conductors within 5 ft (1.5 m) of each other should be bonded. The actual safe separation distance in soil is dependent upon the local earth resistivity. The higher the earth resistivity, the greater the breakdown distance of the soil. Every reasonable

and prudent means should be utilized to locate all intersecting or crossing counterpoise conductors.

A.11.4.4.2 One purpose of an equipotential airfield lighting counterpoise system is to provide equipotential bonding between all elements of the airfield lighting system. To achieve that objective, existing counterpoise conductors should be located and interconnected to new counterpoise conductors. Every reasonable and prudent means should be utilized to locate existing counterpoise conductors.

A.11.4.5.1 The grounding electrode can be installed in the same excavation as the counterpoise conductor.

A.11.4.5.2 The often accepted earth resistance value of 25 ohms should not be interpreted as satisfactory for all installations. (Refer to B.4.4.) Reduced earth resistance values might be necessary to provide effective lightning protection where the lightning risk assessment is high. Whether reduced earth resistance is necessary for protection of the airfield lighting system could be determined from A.11.4.1.1. The AHJ could define the required grounding electrode earth resistance value.

One common means of lowering the ground rod earth resistance is to add length to the ground rod. A simple way to add length to the ground rod is to use sectional ground rods. Additional sections of ground rod are added to the original ground rod and driven deeper into the earth to lower the earth resistance. An alternative is to lay rods horizontally and bond them together, forming a grid below grade. Other means of obtaining a satisfactory earth resistance are discussed in 4.12.8.

A.11.4.6.5 Some components requiring bonding are only accessible during fabrication or construction. Care should be exercised to ensure all required components are bonded. The project inspector, owner's representative, or other person fulfilling a quality assurance/control role should be notified prior to covering new work.

Fixtures with exposed metal parts, cover plates, or accessories that might present a shock hazard should be bonded to the airfield lighting counterpoise system.

A.11.4.7 *Ground strap with a ground clamp* is the terminology typically used by light base manufacturers for a light base grounding or bonding **bolted connector on a light base or mounting stake**. Metallic light bases should be provided with internal and external ground straps, each provided with a ground clamp. Metallic light base accessories/extensions should be provided with an internal ground strap and ground clamp.

A.11.4.8.2 Connection of dissimilar metals requires special consideration of galvanically compatible connectors or fittings. See **Section 110.14 of NFPA 70** for electrical connections.

A.11.4.8.4 A ground strap with a ground clamp provided by the light base manufacturer is an acceptable means of bonding the counterpoise conductor to the metallic light base. Each manufacturer-provided ground clamp is acceptable for the connection of a single counterpoise conductor.

A.11.4.8.5 Exothermic welding is not the recommended method of connecting the counterpoise conductor to a galvanized steel light base. Refer to Part 12.5 of FAA Advisory Circular 150/5340-30J, *Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aids*.

A.12.3.3 For protection of the electrical and mechanical systems associated with solar arrays, it is desirable to maximize the distance between the lightning air terminals and conductors, and the solar array panels, electrical control systems, and cabling. Locating strike termination devices directly on the racking could result in subsequent damage to the solar array in the event of a direct lightning strike to the lightning protection system. If direct mounting to the rack is unavoidable, consideration should be given to additional shielding, separation, or surge protection of the associated electrical and mechanical systems of the solar array.

A.12.5.1.4 Bonding in accordance with Article 690, Part V, of *NFPA 70* could be considered to make the metallic structure electrically continuous.

A.12.5.2.2 Bonding in accordance with Article 690, Part V, of *NFPA 70* could be considered to make the metallic structure electrically continuous.

Annex B Principles of Lightning Protection

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

B.1 Fundamental Principles of Lightning Protection.

B.1.1 The fundamental principle in the protection of life and property against lightning is to provide a means by which a lightning discharge can enter or leave the earth without resulting damage or loss. A low-impedance path that the discharge current will follow in preference to all alternative high-impedance paths offered by building materials such as wood, brick, tile, stone, or concrete should be offered. When lightning follows the higher impedance paths, damage can be caused by the heat and mechanical forces generated during the passage of the discharge. Most metals, being good electrical conductors, are virtually unaffected by either the heat or the mechanical forces if they are of sufficient size to carry the current that can be expected. The metallic path should be continuous from the grounding electrode to the strike termination device. Care should be exercised in the selection of metal conductors to ensure the integrity of the lightning conductor for an extended period. A nonferrous metal such as copper or aluminum will provide, in most atmospheres, a lasting conductor free of the effects of rust or corrosion.

B.1.2 Parts of structures most likely to be struck by lightning are those that project above surrounding parts, such as chimneys, ventilators, flagpoles, towers, water tanks, spires, steeples, deck railings, shafthouses, gables, skylights, dormers, ridges, and parapets. The edges and corners of the roof are the parts most likely to be struck on flat or gently sloping roofed buildings.

B.2 Lightning Protection Systems.

B.2.1 Lightning protection systems consist of the following three basic parts that provide the low-impedance metal path required:

- (1) A system of strike termination devices on the roof and other elevated locations
- (2) A system of grounding electrodes
- (3) A conductor system connecting the strike termination devices to the grounding electrodes

Properly located and installed, these basic components improve the likelihood that the lightning discharge will be conducted harmlessly between the strike termination devices and the grounding electrodes.

B.2.2 While intercepting, conducting, and dissipating the main discharge, the three basic protection system components do not ensure safety from possible secondary effects of a lightning strike. Therefore, secondary conductors are provided to interconnect metal bodies to ensure that such metal bodies are maintained at the same electrical potential so as to prevent sideflashes or sparkover. Surge protection is also provided to protect power lines and associated equipment from both direct discharges and induced currents.

B.2.3 Metal parts of a structure can be used as part of the lightning protection system in some cases. For example, the structural metal framing, which has sufficient cross-sectional area to equal the conductivity of main conductors, and which is electrically continuous, can be used in lieu of separate down conductors. In such cases, air terminals can be bonded to the framework at the top, and grounding electrodes can be provided at the bottom, as described elsewhere in this standard. Structures with $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) thick, or thicker, metal shells or skins that are electrically continuous might not require a system of air terminals and down conductors.

B.2.4 The structure should be examined, and installation of air terminals should be planned for all areas or parts likely to receive a lightning discharge. The object is to intercept the discharge immediately above the parts liable to be struck and to provide a direct path to earth, rather than to attempt to divert the discharge in a direction it would not be likely to take. The air terminals should be placed high enough above the structure to obviate danger of fire from the arc.

B.3 Positioning of Air Terminals. Positioning of air terminals depends upon the physical lightning model used to describe the behavior of lightning. The development of these models has been ongoing for 250 years, and models have a basis in physical observations of lightning. While the models tend to be simplified compared to actual details of lightning development and propagation, empirical observations over hundreds of years have proven their effectiveness.

Air terminals are intended to intercept the lightning event by providing a preferred attachment point for lightning's electrical discharge. They operate by actually providing an upward propagating leader of ionized air to intercept a downward lightning leader. Since these leaders are ionized air of opposite charge, they attract and provide the electrical channel to earth for lightning when they connect. Air terminals placed upon a structure do not substantially increase the probability of the structure being struck by lightning. If the downward progressing lightning leader is close to the structure, it will probably attach to that structure anyway. Thus, air terminals are designed to provide a preferential attachment point on structures that already provide a likely lightning attachment point. Once lightning connects to the air terminal, it is easier to control the lightning current and direct it to earth, as opposed to it taking a random, uncontrolled (and usually damaging) path through the structure otherwise.

B.3.1 Physics of Lightning Attachment. The first stroke of a ground flash is normally preceded by a downward-progressing, low-current leader discharge that commences in the negatively charged region of the cloud and progresses toward the earth,

depositing negative charges in the air surrounding the leader discharge channel. (Occasionally, the downward leader can be positive in charge but this does not affect its behavior in terms of attachment.) When the lower end of the downward leader is 330 ft to 1000 ft (100 m to 300 m) from the earth or grounded objects, upward leaders are likely to be initiated from prominent points on grounded objects and to propagate toward the downward leader. Several upward leaders might start, but usually only one is successful in reaching the downward leader.

The high current phase (return stroke) commences at the moment the upward leader connects with the downward leader. The position in space of the lower portion of the lightning discharge channel is therefore determined by the path of the successful leader (i.e., the one that succeeded in reaching the downward leader). The primary task in protecting a structure is to ensure a high probability that the successful leader originates from the air terminals and not from a part of the structure that would be adversely affected by the lightning current that subsequently flows.

As the path of the successful leader can have a large horizontal component as well as a vertical component, an elevated air terminal will provide protection for objects spread out below it. It is therefore possible to provide protection for a large volume with correctly positioned air terminals. This is the basis for the concept of a "zone of protection" and provides the basic principle underlying lightning protection.

Therefore, the function of an air terminal in a lightning protection system is to divert to itself the lightning discharge that might otherwise strike a vulnerable part of the object to be protected. It is generally accepted that the range over which an air terminal can intercept a lightning discharge is not constant, but increases with the severity of the discharge.

The upper outer edges and corners of buildings or structures, and especially protruding parts, are likely to have higher local electric fields than elsewhere, and are therefore likely places for the initiation of upward leaders. Consequently, the most probable strike attachment point on a building is the edge, corner, or other protruding part in the vicinity of the downward leader. Hence, if air terminals are placed at all locations where high electric fields and leader initiation are likely, there will be a high probability that the discharge will be intercepted successfully. These fields are not as strong on flat surfaces as they are on edges and corners and consequently are less likely to be struck.

B.3.2 Overview of Methods. A "design method" is used to identify the most suitable locations for placing strike termination devices, based on the area of protection afforded by each one. The following are the two categories of "placement methods" as used in NFPA 780:

- (1) Purely geometrical constructions, such as the "cone of protection" or "protection angle" method.
- (2) Electrogeometric models (EGMs), in which empirical relationships for striking distance and lightning peak current are invoked. The most common example is the "rolling sphere method," which is also partly a geometric construction.

B.3.2.1 Cone of Protection Protection Angle Method. This method is based on the assumption that an air terminal or an elevated, grounded object creates an adjacent, conical space that is essentially immune to lightning. The concept of a cone of sufficient angle to define the protected zone has its roots in

the very beginning of lightning protection studies. Although Franklin recognized a limit as to the range of the air terminal in the late 1700s, the concept was first formally proposed by the French Academy of Sciences in 1823 and initially used a base of twice the height (i.e., an angle of 63 degrees). By 1855, this angle was changed to 45 degrees due to field reports that the original method was failing. Generally, this angle was preserved in standards for more than 100 years. In some standards today, a variable angle depending on the height of the structure is used. In addition, this protective angle can be increased when considering the placement of air terminals on the interior of large flat surfaces, due to the reduced electric field strength.

A cone of protection is limited; this is articulated by the requirements in Chapter 4.

B.3.2.2 Rolling Sphere Method. The rolling sphere method was incorporated into NFPA 780 in the 1980 edition. It originated from the electric power transmission industry (lightning strike attachment to phase and shield wires of lines) and is based on the simple electrogeometric model. To apply the method, an imaginary sphere is rolled over the structure. All surface contact points are deemed to require protection, while the unaffected surfaces and volumes are deemed to be protected, as shown in Figure B.3.2.2.

The physical basis for the rolling sphere method is the electrogeometric model. Consider a particular peak lightning current I_p (kA) and the corresponding striking distance d_s (m), where $d_s = 10 I_p^{0.65}$. For a typical peak current of 10 kA, the striking distance is approximately 150 ft (45 m). This is the distance at which a downward leader results in the initiation of an upward leader from the structure.

Note that a smaller striking distance (implying a lower peak current of the lightning event) results in a smaller sphere that can intrude upon the standard 150 ft (45 m) zone of protection. Thus, a more conservative design is to size the sphere using a lower lightning peak current. Lightning peak currents below 5 kA to 7 kA are not common. Ten kA peak current represents 91 percent of all lightning events.

The advantage of the rolling sphere method is that it is relatively easy to apply, even to buildings with complicated shapes. However, since it is a simplification of the physical process of lightning attachment to a structure, it has some limitations. The main limitation is that it assigns an equal leader initiation ability to all contact points on the structure; no account is taken of the influence of electric fields in initiating return streamers, so it does not distinguish between likely and unlikely lightning strike attachment points. In other words, for a given prospective peak stroke current, the striking distance d_s is a *constant value*. This simplification stems from the RSM's origins in the electrical power transmission industry, where there is considerable uniformity in the parameters of transmission lines (diameters, heights, etc.). In reality, lightning could preferentially strike the corner of a building rather than the vertical flat surface halfway down the side of the building. The same claims apply to the flat roof of a structure.

Some qualitative indication of the probability of strike attachment to any particular point can be obtained if the sphere is supposed to be rolled over the building in such a manner that its center moves at constant speed. Then the length of time that the sphere dwells on any point of the building gives a qualitative indication of the probability of that point being struck. Thus, for a simple rectangular building with a flat

roof, the dwell time would be large at the corners and edges and small at any point on the flat part of the roof, correctly indicating a higher probability of the corners or edges being struck and a low probability that a point on the flat part of the roof will be struck.

Where the RSM is applied to a building of height greater than the selected sphere radius, the sphere touches the vertical edges on the sides of the building at all points above a height equal to the sphere radius. This indicates the possibility of strikes to the sides of the building and raises the question of the need for an air terminal network in these locations. Studies show that strikes to vertical edges on the sides of tall buildings do occur but are not very common. There are theoretical reasons for believing that only flashes with low I_p , and consequently low d_s , values are likely to be able to penetrate below the level of the roof of a building and strike the sides. Hence, the consequences of a strike to the sides of a building could result in damage of a minor nature. Unless there are specific reasons for side protection, as would be the case of a structure containing explosives, it is considered that the cost of side protection would not normally be justified.

B.4 Items to Consider When Planning Protection.

B.4.1 The best time to design a lightning protection system for a structure is during the structure's design phase, and the best time to install the system can be during construction. System components can be built in so as to be protected from mechanical displacement and environmental effects. In addition, aesthetic advantages can be gained by such concealment. Generally, it is less expensive to meet lightning protection requirements during construction.

B.4.2 Conductors should be installed to offer the least impedance to the passage of stroke current between the strike termination devices and earth. The most direct path, without sharp bends or narrow loops, is best. The impedance of the conductor system is practically inversely proportional to the number of widely separated paths. Accordingly, there should be at least two paths to ground and more, if practicable, from each strike termination device. The number of paths is increased and the impedance decreased by connecting the conductors to form a cage enclosing the building.

B.4.3 Properly made ground connections are essential to the effective functioning of a lightning protection system, and

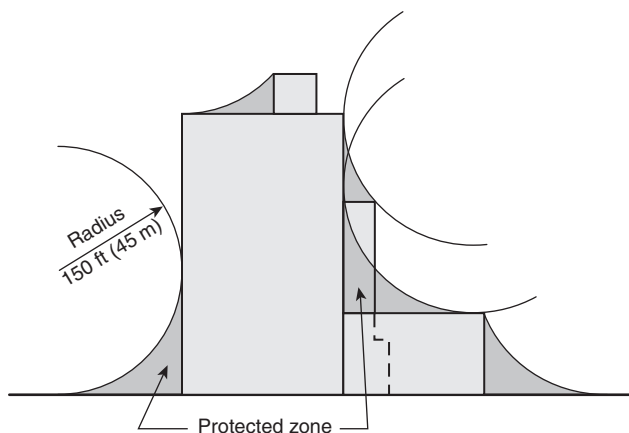


FIGURE B.3.2.2 Lightning Protection Design Using the Rolling Sphere Method.

every effort should be made to provide ample contact with the earth. This does not necessarily mean that the resistance of the ground connection should be low, but rather that the distribution of metal in the earth or upon its surface in extreme cases should be such as to permit the dissipation of a stroke of lightning without damage.

B.4.4 Low resistance is desirable, but not essential, as shown by the extreme case on the one hand of a building resting on moist clay soil, and on the other by a building resting on bare solid rock.

B.4.4.1 In the first case, if the soil is of normal resistivity of 40 ohm-meters to 500 ohm-meters, the resistance of a ground connection made by extending the conductor 10 ft (3 m) into the ground will be from about 15 ohms to 200 ohms, and two such ground connections on a small rectangular building have been found by experience to be sufficient. Under these favorable conditions, providing adequate means for collecting and dissipating the energy of a flash without serious chance of damage is a simple and comparatively inexpensive matter.

B.4.4.2 In the second case, it would be impossible to make a ground connection in the ordinary sense of the term because most kinds of rocks are insulating, or at least of high resistivity, and in order to obtain effective grounding other more elaborate means are necessary. The most effective means would be an extensive wire network laid on the surface of the rock surrounding the building to which the down conductors could be connected. The resistance to earth at some distant point of such an arrangement would be high, but at the same time the potential distribution about the building would be substantially the same, as though the building were resting on conducting soil, and the resulting protective effect also would be substantially the same.

B.4.5 In general, the extent of the grounding arrangements depends on the character of the soil, ranging from simple extension of the conductor into the ground where the soil is deep and of high conductivity to an elaborate buried network where the soil is very dry or of very poor conductivity. Where a network is required, it should be buried if there is soil enough to permit burial, as this adds to its effectiveness. Its extent will be determined largely by the judgment of the person planning the installation with due regard to the following rule: The more extensive the underground metal available, the more effective the protection.

B.4.6 Where practicable, each grounding electrode connection should extend or have a branch that extends below and at least 24 in. (600 mm) away from the foundation walls of the building in order to minimize the likelihood of damage to foundation walls, footings, and stemwalls.

B.4.7 When a lightning conductor system is placed on a building, within or about which there are metal objects of considerable size within a few feet of a conductor, there will be a tendency for sparks or sideflashes to jump between the metal object and the conductor. To prevent damage, interconnecting conductors should be provided at all places where sideflashes are likely to occur.

B.4.8 Lightning currents entering protected buildings on overhead or underground power lines, telephone conductors, or television or radio antennas are not necessarily restricted to associated wiring systems and appliances. Therefore, such

systems should be equipped with appropriate surge protection and bonded to ensure a common potential.

B.4.9 Because a lightning protection system is expected to remain in working condition for long periods with minimum attention, the mechanical construction should be strong, and the materials used should offer resistance to corrosion and mechanical injury.

B.5 Inspection and Maintenance of Lightning Protection Systems. It has been shown that, in cases where damage has occurred to a protected structure, the damage was due to additions or repairs to the building or to deterioration or mechanical damage that was allowed to go undetected and unrepaired, or both. Therefore, it is recommended that an annual visual inspection be made and that the system be thoroughly inspected every five years.

B.6 Indirect Losses. In addition to direct losses such as destruction of buildings by lightning, fire resulting from lightning, and the killing of livestock, indirect losses sometimes accompany the destruction or damage of buildings and their contents. An interruption to business or farming operations, especially at certain times of the year, might involve losses quite distinct from, and in addition to, the losses arising from the direct destruction of material property. There are cases where whole communities depend on the integrity of a single structure for their safety and comfort. For example, a community might depend on a water-pumping plant, a telephone relay station, a police station, or a fire station. A stroke of lightning to the unprotected chimney of a pumping plant might have serious consequences such as a lack of sanitary drinking water, irrigating water, or water for fire protection. Additional information on this topic is available in the documents identified in Annex O.

Annex C Explanation of Bonding Principles

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

C.1 General. Lightning strikes can give rise to harmful potential differences in and on a building. The major concern in the protection of a building is the occurrence of potential differences between the conductors of the lightning protection system and other grounded metal bodies and wires belonging to the building. These potential differences are caused by resistive and inductive effects and can be of such a magnitude that dangerous sparking can occur. In order to reduce the possibility of sparking, it is necessary to equalize potentials by bonding grounded metal bodies to the lightning protection system.

Where a structure can be designed to isolate the largest quantity of grounded systems from the lightning protection system components, this should be considered. Maintaining separation distances beyond the bonding distance requirements for building grounded systems above grade might include placing all main feeders in the building center or core to avoid the lightning protection down conductors and structural bonding around the building perimeter. Planning the construction in this manner can eliminate the need for interior bonding except for system branches extending near the perimeter system. All grounded metallic systems require bonding at grade in accordance with Section 4.13, and systems extending vertically more than 60 ft (18 m) require bonding in accordance with Sections 4.14 and 4.15.

Where installing (or modifying) lightning protection systems on existing structures, bonding of certain grounded metal bodies can present difficult installation problems due to the inaccessibility of building systems. Isolating lightning protection system elements to provide separation distance from grounded metal bodies or increasing the number of down conductors to shorten the required bonding distances are options that can be used to overcome these problems.

C.2 Potential Differences. Figure C.2 illustrates the generation of potential differences between conductors of the lightning protection system and other grounded metal bodies and wires.

C.2.1 Resistive Effect. In the situation in which conductor *C* is connected only to a grounding electrode and the water pipe is independently grounded, a large potential can exist between *B* and *F*. Assuming a resistance of 20 ohms between *C* and ground and a lightning current of 100,000 A, then Ohm's law (voltage = current \times resistance) indicates that a potential of 2 million volts exists on conductor *ABC*. Because no current is initially passing through the water pipe, its potential is zero volts. The difference of potential of 2 million volts between *B* and *F* is sufficient for a sideflash of over 6 ft (1.8 m). To reduce the potential to essentially zero, this standard requires equalization of potentials at ground level in accordance with 4.14.1. Such a bond is shown as *CD* in Figure C.2.

With bond *CD* in position, the resistance between *B* and *F* is essentially zero; hence, during a lightning strike, the potential at *B* due to the resistive effect is similar to that at *F*. Therefore, the resistive effect can be neglected for bonding purposes.

C.2.2 Inductive Effect. When a large current passes down the lightning conductor *ABC*, a magnetic field is generated in circular motion around the conductor as shown in Figure C.2. The higher the lightning current, the higher the magnetic

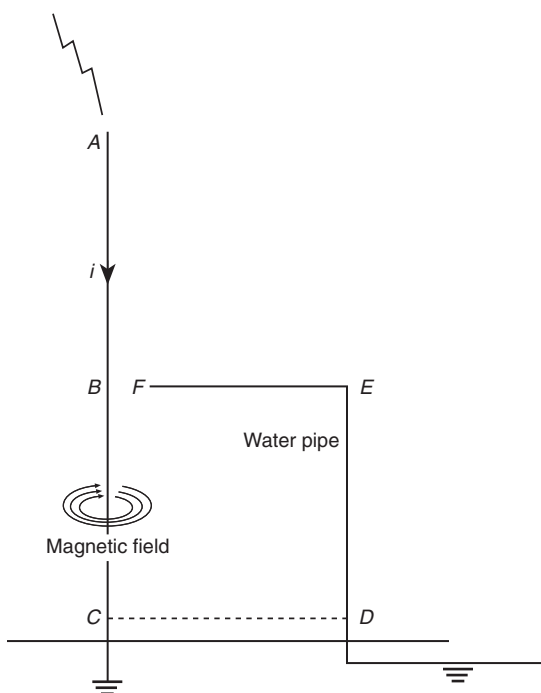


FIGURE C.2 The Magnetic Field Around a Conductor.

field. These magnetic field lines can be referred to as *magnetic flux*.

The loop *BCDEF* is intercepted by these lines of magnetic flux. The rate of change of the flux passing through this loop induces a voltage in the loop, creating a potential difference between *B* and *F*. This potential difference can be in the order of a few million volts, again causing a sideflash.

The bonding techniques described in this standard call for bonding the gaps over which high potentials exist, such as *BF*, in order to remove the spark and provide a safe path to ground for the current. The bonding-distance formulas are derived from the laws of physics, making assumptions on the relevant lightning characteristics that influence the induced voltage. The assumptions for this standard are based on an extremely severe lightning current, thereby providing a bonding distance that is almost totally protective.

The voltage across the gap *BF* is related to the size of the loop *BCDEF* but dominantly to the height *BC* rather than the horizontal measure *CD*; hence the height *h* term is used in the formulas of 4.15.2. Equalizing the potentials at frequent heights in accordance with Section 4.14 also reduces the size of the loop *BCDEF*, thereby keeping the gap voltage to a controllable value that can be removed by simple bonding.

C.2.3 Power and Communications Services. One factor that is difficult to control is related to power and communication lines entering the building. For all intents, such lines are at ground potential relative to the extremely high induced voltages. If the line *DEF* were such an electrical, telephone, power, or data line not bonded at ground, the voltage across the loop would be enhanced by the resistive effect described by Ohm's Law, as well as by the inductive effect. Hence, *BF* could soon approach breakdown, which could lead to sparks causing fire, as well as the obvious electrical, electronic, and human life dangers. All such lines entering the building should have electrical bonding through surge protection as specified in Section 4.19, thereby reducing the resistive component and controlling dangerous sparking and damage. If one wire does not have such surge protection, the dangers described still exist for the protected building and the electrical equipment. Table C.2.3 shows sample calculations.

C.2.4 Reduction of Potential Difference. To reduce the voltage across the gap *BF* so as to make bonding less necessary, it is possible to provide more down conductors. This standard requires down conductors every 100 ft (30 m) (see 4.8.10), but the number of down conductors, *n*, required in the bonding formulas of 4.15.2 is restricted. It can be shown theoretically for structures less than 60 ft (18 m) in height that for a series of planar down conductors spaced 50 ft (15 m) apart, *n* can be no larger than 1.5, and for a similar three-dimensional situation, *n* can be no larger than 2.25. These values of *n* also apply to the upper 60 ft (18 m) of a tall structure. As the lightning current passes into the lower portion of a tall structure, however, the value of *n* must be calculated on the assumption that the current flow down the structure is much more symmetrical through the down conductors. Using this assumption, for all but the upper 60 ft (18 m) of a structure, the bonding distance can be calculated from a formula involving a larger value of *n*, as shown in 4.15.2.

C.2.5 Sideflash. Sideflashing can easily occur to grounded objects within the building. The intensity of the electric field in air is greater than that in concrete by approximately a factor of

Table C.2.3 Sample Calculations of Bonding Distances

<i>h</i>		<i>K_m</i>	<i>D</i>					
			<i>n</i> = 1.0		<i>n</i> = 1.5		<i>n</i> = 2.25	
ft	m		ft	m	ft	m	ft	m
10	3.05	1	1 ft 8 in.	0.50	1 ft 1 ³ / ₈ in.	0.33	9 in.	0.22
		0.5	10 in.	0.25	6 ³ / ₄ in.	0.17	4 ¹ / ₂ in.	0.11
20	6.10	1	3 ft 4 in.	1.01	2 ft 2 ³ / ₄ in.	0.67	1 ft 6 in.	0.45
		0.5	1 ft 8 in.	0.50	1 ft 1 ³ / ₈ in.	0.33	9 in.	0.22
30	9.15	1	5 ft 0 in.	1.52	3 ft 4 in.	1.01	2 ft 2 ³ / ₄ in.	0.67
		0.5	2 ft 6 in.	0.76	1 ft 8 in.	0.50	1 ft 1 ³ / ₈ in.	0.33
40	12.2	1	6 ft 8 in.	2.03	4 ft 6 in.	1.37	3 ft	0.91
		0.5	3 ft 4 in.	1.01	2 ft 3 in.	0.68	1 ft 6 in.	0.45

2, allowing for a reduction of the sideflash distance through a wall cavity.

If an individual touches a correctly bonded connection within the building, he or she should suffer no harm. This scenario is similar to that of a bird sitting on a high-voltage wire unaware that the bird's potential is changing from over a thousand volts positive to over a thousand volts negative several times a second.

Annex D Inspection and Maintenance of Lightning Protection Systems

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

D.1 Inspection of Lightning Protection Systems.

D.1.1 Frequency of Inspections. It is understood that all new lightning protection systems must be inspected following completion of their installation. Recommended guidelines for the maintenance of the lightning protection system should be provided to the owner at the completion of installation.

It is important to make periodic inspections of existing systems. The interval between inspections should be determined by factors such as the following:

- (1) Classification of the structure or area protected
- (2) Level of protection afforded by the system
- (3) Immediate environment (corrosive atmospheres)
- (4) Materials from which system components are made
- (5) Type of surface to which the lightning protection components are attached
- (6) Trouble reports or complaints

D.1.1.1 In addition to regular periodic inspections, a lightning protection system should be inspected whenever any alterations or repairs are made to a protected structure, as well as following any known lightning discharge to the system.

D.1.1.2 It is recommended that lightning protection systems be visually inspected at least annually. In some areas where severe climatic changes occur, it might be advisable to visually inspect systems semiannually or following extreme changes in ambient temperatures. Complete, in-depth inspections of all systems should be completed every 3 to 5 years. It is recommended that critical systems be inspected every 1 to 3 years,

depending on occupancy or the environment where the protected structure is located.

D.1.1.3 In most geographical areas, and especially in areas that experience extreme seasonal changes in temperature and rainfall, it is advisable to stagger inspections so that earth resistance measurements, for example, are made in the hot, dry months as well as the cool, wet months. Such staggering of inspections and testing is important in assessing the effectiveness of the lightning protection system during the various seasons throughout the year.

D.1.2 Visual Inspection. Visual inspections are made to ascertain the following:

- (1) The system is in good repair.
- (2) There are no loose connections that might result in high-resistance joints.
- (3) No part of the system has been weakened by corrosion or vibration.
- (4) All down conductors and grounding electrodes are intact (not severed).
- (5) All conductors and system components are fastened securely to their mounting surfaces and are protected against accidental mechanical displacement as required.
- (6) There have not been additions or alterations to the protected structure that would require additional protection.
- (7) There is no visual indication of damage to SPDs and confirm status lights where provided.
- (8) The system complies in all respects with the current edition of this standard.

D.1.3 Complete Testing and Inspection. Complete testing and inspection includes the visual inspections described in D.1.2 and the following:

- (1) Tests to verify continuity of those parts of the system that were concealed (built in) during the initial installation and that are now not available for visual inspection.
- (2) Ground resistance tests of the grounding electrode termination system and its individual grounding electrodes, if adequate disconnecting means have been provided. These test results should be compared with previous or original results or current accepted values, or both, for the soil conditions involved. If it is found that the test values differ substantially from previous values obtained under the same test procedures, additional investigations

should be made to determine the reason for the difference.

- (3) Continuity tests to determine if suitable equipotential bonding has been established for any new services or constructions that have been added to the interior of the structure since the last inspection.

D.1.4 Inspection Guides and Records. Inspection guides or forms should be prepared and made available to the authority responsible for conducting inspections of lightning protection systems. These forms should contain sufficient information to guide the inspector through the inspection process so that he or she can document all areas of importance relating to the methods of installation, the type and condition of system components, test methods, and the proper recording of the test data obtained.

D.1.5 Records and Test Data. The inspector or inspection authority should compile and maintain records pertaining to the following:

- (1) General condition of air terminals, conductors, and other components
- (2) General condition of corrosion-protection measures
- (3) Security of attachment of conductors and components
- (4) Resistance measurements of various parts of the grounding electrode system
- (5) Any variations from the requirements contained in this standard

D.2 Maintenance of Lightning Protection Systems.

D.2.1 General. Maintenance of a lightning protection system is extremely important even though the lightning protection design engineer has taken special precautions to provide corrosion protection and has sized the components according to their particular exposure to lightning damage. Many system components tend to lose their effectiveness over the years because of corrosion factors, weather-related damage, and stroke damage. The physical as well as the electrical characteristics of the lightning protection system must be maintained in order to remain in compliance with design requirements.

D.2.2 Maintenance Procedures.

D.2.2.1 Periodic maintenance programs should be established for all lightning protection systems. The frequency of maintenance procedures is dependent on the following:

- (1) Weather-related degradation
- (2) Frequency of stroke damage
- (3) Protection level required
- (4) Exposure to stroke damage

Δ D.2.2.2 Lightning protection system maintenance procedures should be established for each system and should become a part of the overall maintenance program for the structure it protects.

A maintenance program should contain a list of more or less routine items that can serve as a checklist and establish a definite maintenance procedure that can be followed regularly. It is the repeatability of the procedures that enhances the effectiveness of a good maintenance program.

A good maintenance program should contain provisions for the following:

- (1) Inspection of all conductors and system components
- (2) Tightening of all clamps and splicers

- (3) Measurement of lightning protection system resistance
- (4) Measurement of resistance of grounding electrodes
- (5) Inspection or testing, or both, of equipment providing surge protection to determine its effectiveness compared to similar new devices
- (6) Refastening and tightening of components and conductors as required
- (7) Inspection and testing as required to determine if the effectiveness of the lightning protection system has been altered by additions to or changes in the structure

D.2.3 Maintenance Records. Complete records should be kept of all maintenance procedures and routines and of corrective actions that have been or will be taken. Such records provide a means of evaluating system components and their installation. They also serve as a basis for reviewing maintenance procedures as well as updating preventive maintenance programs.

Annex E Ground Measurement Techniques

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

E.1 General.

E.1.1 In order to determine the ground resistance of a lightning protection system, it is necessary to remove it from any other ground connection. This can prove to be a virtually impossible task, necessitating certain assumptions. In reality, ground resistance-measuring equipment works at low frequencies relative to the lightning discharge. The resistance it computes is therefore often affected by the resistance of power-system grounding electrodes or a similar ground medium that can be several thousand feet from the structure being protected. The ground resistance to be used to calculate lightning conductor potentials when a high-frequency lightning discharge strikes a building must be the grounds in the immediate area of the building, not the remote ones that ground-measuring equipment probably monitors.

E.1.2 If the building is small and the lightning protection system can be disconnected totally from any other grounding network, the resistance of the system can be measured by the three-point technique described in E.1.3. If the building is large or cannot be disconnected totally from any other grounding network, then the ground resistance of individually disconnected lightning protection ground rods should be measured by the three-point technique described in E.1.3 with the measured resistance values used to estimate the overall resistance of the grounding systems. IEEE 142, *Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems*, provides a method for calculating overall system grounding resistance by dividing the measured value of an individual grounding electrode by the number of electrodes in the system and multiplying this value by a factor F related to the number of electrodes in the grounding system.

Δ E.1.3 The principle of ground resistance measurement is shown in Figure E.1.3. L is the lightning grounding electrode or grounding electrode system, P is the potential (voltage) test probe, and C is the remote current probe. M is the standard earth resistivity measuring equipment for three-point technique ground resistance measurements. Convenient distances for LP and LC are 75 ft (23 m) and 120 ft (36 m), respectively. In general, P should be 62 percent of the distance from L to C . If a distance of 120 ft (36 m) is not convenient, it can be

increased significantly [or reduced to no less than 50 ft (15 m)], provided LP is increased/decreased proportionately.

The F and C probe leads should be placed in a manner that minimizes mutual coupling. A current, I , is passed through the electrode or electrodes to be tested, L , and through the C probe. The voltage, V , between L and P is measured by the test equipment, which injects a known current, I , and calculates the ground resistance, R , using Ohm's law. Alternating current, generally on the order of 79 Hz or other frequencies removed from 60 Hz or multiples thereof, is used to avoid errors caused by electrolytic factors in the soil and to remove effects caused by stray currents.

Three-point ground resistance-measuring equipment using these principles is relatively inexpensive and allows for direct reading of R .

NOTE: The individual equipment manufacturer's recommended operational procedures should be used.

E.1.4 Variations in soil resistivity due to temperature and moisture fluctuations can affect the measured ground resistance. A good designer will measure ground resistance under average or high resistivity conditions in order to design a lightning protection system to function adequately.

If the building ground is complex in nature, the resistance of single ground rods can be measured and certain assumptions made. The average single ground rod resistance, R_m , must be multiplied by a factor depending on the number of lightning protection ground rods, n , spaced at least 35 ft (10.7 m) apart.

The total system ground resistance, R , can be calculated from the formula:

$$R = 1.1 \left(\frac{R_m}{n} \right) \quad [\text{E.1.4}]$$

where:

R = total system ground resistance

R_m = average single ground rod resistance

n = number of lightning protection ground rods

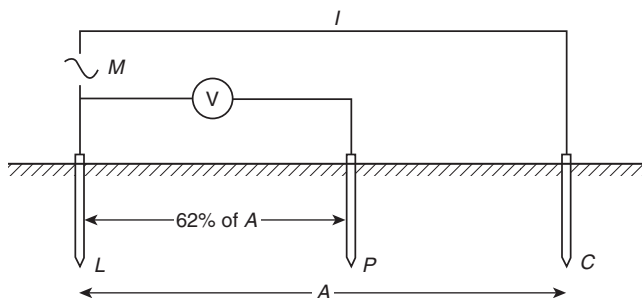


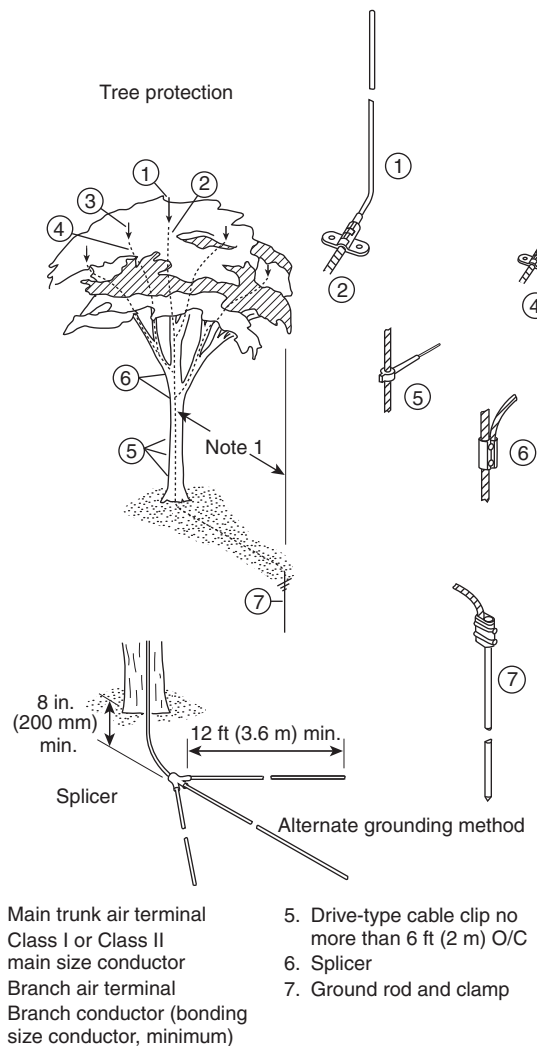
FIGURE E.1.3 Measurement of Ground Resistance.

Annex F Protection for Trees

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

F.1 General. Trees with trunks within 10 ft (3 m) of a structure or with branches that extend to a height above the structure should be equipped with lightning protection systems due to the danger of sideflash, fire, or superheating of the moisture in the tree, which could result in splintering of the tree. It might be desirable to equip other trees with a lightning protection system because of a particular tree's value to the owner. Figure F.1 illustrates such protection.

Note that adding protection to a tree will not ensure the safety of people seeking shelter under the tree during a thunderstorm. Possible sideflashes, step potential, and touch potential could threaten the safety of people under trees.



Notes:

1. Locate grounding electrode at least 12 ft (3.6 m) from the trunk to avoid root damage.
2. Air terminal tip configurations can be sharp or blunt.

FIGURE F.1 Protection for Trees.

F.2 Methods and Materials.

F.2.1 Conductors. Conductors should conform to the recommendations in Figure F.1.

F.2.2 Coursing of Conductors. A single conductor should be run from the highest part of the tree along the trunk to a ground connection. If the tree is forked, branch conductors should be extended to the highest parts of the principal limbs.

F.2.3 Air Terminals. The conductors should be extended to the highest part of the tree, terminating with an air terminal.

F.2.4 Attachment of Conductors. Conductors should be attached to the tree securely in such a way as to allow for swaying in the wind and growth without danger of breakage.

F.2.5 Grounding Electrodes. Grounding electrodes for conductors should be in accordance with the following:

- (1) Be connected to all conductors that descend the trunk of the tree, extend one or more radial conductors in trenches 8 in. (200 mm), and be spaced at equal intervals about the base to a distance not less than 10 ft (3 m) or a single driven ground rod installed at least 12 ft (3.6 m) from the tree trunk (*See Figure F.1.*)
- (2) Have radial conductors extend not less than 12 ft (3.6 m)
- (3) Be bonded to an underground metallic water pipe where available within 25 ft (7.6 m) of the branch line

Annex G Protection for Picnic Grounds, Playgrounds, Ball Parks, and Other Open Places

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

G.1 Picnic Grounds and Playgrounds. Protection from lightning can be provided by the methods indicated in G.1.1 or G.1.2.

G.1.1 Design concerns for lightning protection systems on open shelters include the following:

- (1) Step potential
- (2) Touch potential
- (3) Sideflash to persons and animals

Lightning protection systems for open shelters should conform to the requirements of Chapter 4 with the guidance given in G.1.1.1 through G.1.1.3.

G.1.1.1 Step Potential Reduction. Establishment of an electrically equipotential plane is desired to reduce step potential within the shelter perimeter. This can be accomplished by installation of a grounding grid or other equivalent method, including the following:

- (1) Concrete-floor shelters might need no additional enhancement. However, for new construction, it is desirable to establish a grid below the surface of the concrete that should be bonded to the down-conductor system and the grounding system.
- (2) Wood floors, or other essentially insulating flooring materials, should also have a grid installed as described in G.1.1.3.
- (3) Earth-floored shelters should also have a grid installed as described in G.1.1.3.

G.1.1.2 Sideflash and Touch Potential Reduction. Additional measures to reduce the possibility of sideflash and touch potential within the structure include the following:

- (1) Providing down conductors at each corner of a structure (four for a typical rectangular structure). Structures of irregular shape or with many sides should use no fewer than four down conductors if it is impractical to install one at each corner.
- (2) Shielding down conductors to at least 8 ft (2.4 m) in height with electrically insulating material that is resistant to climatic conditions and impact. Where structural steel framework is used, electrical insulation of the structural steel is less critical due to the typically larger size of the structural steel framework and its lower inductive reactance. Insulation of the structural steel framework will further reduce the probability of sideflash and touch potential hazards.
- (3) Bonding structural steel to the grounding electrode.

G.1.1.3 Grounding. Grounding terminations should be installed as specified in Chapter 4, with the following additional guidance:

- (1) For existing concrete floors, a ground ring should be installed. As an additional precaution, radial grounding is recommended to be installed at points around the periphery.
- (2) The grounding grid should be constructed of main-size interconnected copper conductors at no greater than 3 ft (1 m) spacing between conductors. The periphery of the grid should be interconnected. Burial of the grid should be at a depth of no less than 6 in. (150 mm) and no greater than 18 in. (450 mm).
- (3) The grid perimeter should be connected to grounding electrodes with radial grounding extensions recommended.

G.1.2 Masts and Overhead Ground Wires. Masts (poles) located on opposite ends of or around the perimeter of picnic grounds or playgrounds to be protected are the most efficient method to protect a large open area. For larger areas, the interconnection of the masts using overhead ground wires could be necessary to provide sufficient protection for the area to be protected. Where wooden masts are used, the top of the mast must be equipped with an air terminal to provide a primary attachment point for the lightning strike. It is necessary to provide down conductors between the overhead wires or air terminals and installed grounding electrodes. The down conductors and overhead ground wires should be of a size equivalent to main-size conductors or larger. Conductive masts do not require air terminals or down conductors but the masts must be grounded. Down conductors and metallic masts should be shielded to a height of not less than 8 ft (2.4 m) with material resistant to impact and climate conditions.

G.2 Ball Parks and Racetracks.

G.2.1 Roofed Grandstands. Roofed grandstands are included within the scope of this standard.

G.2.2 Open Grandstands and Open Spectator Areas. Open grandstands and open spectator areas should be provided with masts and overhead ground wires as described in G.1.2.

G.3 Beaches. Beaches should be provided with shelters as described in G.1.1.

G.4 Piers.

G.4.1 Covered Piers. Covered piers are included within the scope of this standard.

G.4.2 Open Piers. Open piers should be provided with masts and overhead ground wires as described in G.1.2.

Annex H Protection for Livestock in Fields

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

H.1 General.

H.1.1 The nature of the exposure of livestock in fields is such that it is not possible to eliminate the hazard entirely. However, application of the recommendations contained in this annex can minimize the hazard.

H.1.2 The loss of livestock due to lightning during thunderstorms is caused in large measure by herds congregating under isolated trees in open pastures or drifting against ungrounded wire fences and receiving a sufficient discharge to kill them.

H.1.3 In pastures where shelter is available from wooded areas of considerable size, isolated trees should be removed.

H.1.4 Fences built with metal posts set in the earth are as safe from lightning as it is practical to make them, especially if the electrical continuity is broken. Breaking the electrical continuity is very useful in that it reduces the possibility of a lightning stroke affecting the entire length of a fence, as is possible if the stroke is direct and the fence continuous, even though it might be grounded. The fences that give rise to the most trouble are those constructed with posts of poorly conducting material, such as wood.

H.2 Grounding of Wire Fences.

H.2.1 Nonconductive Posts. Where it is desirable or necessary to mitigate the danger from wire fences constructed with posts of nonconducting material, H.2.2 and H.2.3 should be applied.

H.2.2 Iron Posts. Ground connections can be made by inserting galvanized-iron posts, such as those ordinarily used for farm fencing, at intervals and attaching in electrical contact all the wires of the fence. Grounding can also be achieved by driving a length of not less than ½ in. (12.7 mm) in diameter galvanized-iron pipe beside the fence and attaching the wires by ties of galvanized-iron wire. If the ground is normally dry, the intervals between metal posts should not exceed 150 ft (45 m). If the ground is normally damp, the metal posts can be placed up to 300 ft (90 m) apart.

H.2.3 Depth of Grounds. Pipes should be extended into the ground at least 24 in. (600 mm).

H.3 Breaking Continuity of Fence.

H.3.1 In addition to grounding the fence, its electrical continuity should be broken by inserting insulating material in breaks in the wires at intervals of about 500 ft (150 m). These insertions can be in the form of fence panels of wood or lengths of insulating material to the ends of which the wires can be attached. Such lengths of insulating material can consist of strips of wood about 2 in. × 2 in. × 24 in. (50 mm × 50 mm × 600 mm), or their equivalent as far as insulating properties and mechanical strength are concerned.

H.3.2 In areas where herds can congregate along fences, the continuity should be broken at more frequent intervals than described in H.3.1.

Annex I Protection for Parked Aircraft

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

I.1 General Principles.

I.1.1 For the purposes of this annex, aircraft includes airplanes, helicopters, and lighter-than-air craft. Aircraft can best be protected by being placed inside a lightning-protected hangar. Hangar facilities should be provided with grounding receptacles to permit interconnection of metal aircraft with the hangar lightning protection system. It is important that hangar floors, aprons, and aircraft parking areas be kept free of gaso-line or other flammable liquids.

I.1.2 All metal airplanes parked outside hangars should be grounded. This grounding can be achieved by the use of grounded metal tie-down cables or the equivalent. An aircraft having fabric or plastic covering materials can be protected by connecting its metal frame to ground. For additional protection of aircraft parked outside hangars, an overhead ground wire or mast-type lightning protection system can be provided. The height should be in accordance with the zones of protection described in Chapter 4.

I.1.3 The effects of lightning strikes to metal and composite aircraft are a matter of continuous study. The use of surge **protection** on critical navigational, radio-communication, and radar equipment can help to minimize these effects. Suitable equipment and electrical wiring layout can also aid in reducing lightning-induced problems.

I.1.4 Commercial aircraft have grown considerably larger in recent years and in many cases are taller than surrounding airport terminal buildings. A review of available lightning-strike injury data indicates that nearly all of the reported personal injuries were the result of lightning-induced static discharge.

I.1.5 The grounding methods used for aircraft undergoing fuel servicing and certain maintenance operations are not necessarily adequate to provide effective lightning protection for aircraft or persons. The installation of additional grounding straps, preferably at the aircraft's extremities, during thunderstorm activity will provide alternative paths to ground for any current flow resulting from the rapid adjustment in the aircraft surface charge. Experience has shown that additional grounding straps offer little protection in the event of a direct strike to the aircraft. Fuel servicing operations and other maintenance operations involving the use of flammable liquids or the release of flammable vapors should be suspended during lightning storms. Refer to NFPA 407 and NFPA 410 for more information.

I.1.6 Baggage handling, exterior maintenance, and servicing of parked aircraft should be suspended when a thunderstorm is in the vicinity of an airport. Lightning-warning equipment can be utilized to aid in determining when to suspend these operations. There are many detection methods capable of detecting and tracking approaching storms. One such method — atmospherics — is being used to establish lightning-detection networks that now cover approximately half of the United States. While atmospherics equipment can give positional infor-

mation of distant lightning, it gives no warning of a cloud directly overhead becoming electrified. Devices that measure some property of the electric field can detect the development of a hazardous condition and provide a warning prior to the first discharge.

I.1.7 Cables connected to parked aircraft should not be handled when a thunderstorm is in the vicinity. The use of hand signals, without the use of headsets, is recommended for ground-to-cockpit communications during this period.

Annex J Protection of Smart Structures

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

J.1 Introduction. Protection of smart structures and the associated equipment is provided in this annex. Additional measures, beyond those specified in the earlier chapters of NFPA 780, are suggested for enhanced protection of smart structures equipment under lightning conditions. While the principles and methods in this standard provide adequate protection for structures subject to direct lightning and indirect surge effects, the nature of equipment in smart structures makes them more vulnerable. Due to the high degree of electrical interconnection, particularly data wiring, there are many more ways for surges to enter the most sensitive parts of the equipment.

J.2 Description. Smart structures are characterized by a high degree of automation and interconnected systems. These interconnected systems are often widely distributed throughout the structure, or between adjacent structures. Typically, these systems have a large amount of control wiring and interfaces/apertures between equipment items and structures.

J.3 Characteristics. A characteristic of smart structures is the presence of sensitive electronics. These electronics, often consisting of computers, alarm systems, transducers, programmable logic controllers (PLCs), audiovisual and other equipment need enhanced protection against the effects of lightning. Two primary techniques for enhanced protection are described in this annex, equipotential grounding and surge protection.

J.4 Coordination of Trades. In smart structures, it is essential to coordinate the efforts of the trades to ensure comprehensive protection. Ideally, a prime contractor, architect, designer, engineer, etc., will plan for and oversee the installation of the electrical services, alarm systems, and other services to ensure the best installation practices described in this annex are followed. One of the most common problems in smart structures is the lack of potential equalization (isolated grounding and lack of bonding) arising from piecemeal, or sequential, uncoordinated installations of the electric service, telecommunications, antennas and other electronics used in smart structures. Otherwise, an installer of electronic equipment must consider and coordinate with other installers and the placement of the electrical service for maximum protection.

J.5 Lightning Protection Zones. A lightning protection zone (LPZ) is an area or zone with a defined electromagnetic environment. For example, LPZ 0 represents the external lightning threat environment. It is subdivided into LPZ 0_A, which is the electromagnetic environment defined by the threat of a direct lightning strike (full or partial lightning surge current) and a nonattenuated lightning electromagnetic field (LEMP), and

LPZ 0_B, which is subject to the same electromagnetic environment but not subject to direct strikes. Equipment located in an LPZ 0_B environment could be subject to partial lightning surge currents.

Direct bond or surge protection zones interior to the structure are characterized by exposure to surge current levels limited by current sharing, isolating interfaces, and/or surge protection at the boundary of the zone. The walls of the structure will likely attenuate the lightning electromagnetic field, the amount of which will be dependent on the actual construction techniques. The initial lightning protection zone in a structure is indicated as LPZ 1 and the specific environment required for the zone is dictated by the characteristics of the internal electrical equipment (where the LEMP severity is compatible with the withstand level of the internal systems enclosed). Where there is electrical equipment with greater sensitivity to the LEMP environment defined for LPZ 1, successive zones should be established. The boundary of an LPZ is defined by the protection measures employed. Figure J.5 provides the general application of the zone concept and identifies an application with two internal zones. Subsequent zones reflect the need for greater limitations of surge current, which can be implemented through additional current sharing, isolating interfaces, and/or additional surge protection at the boundary. Additional spatial shielding should be used to further attenuate the lightning electromagnetic field.

J.6 Installation Types. Typically, in smart structures, there are two general types of installations. These consist of equipment rooms and distributed equipment. Equipment rooms house computers/servers, PLCs, alarm controls, telecommunications

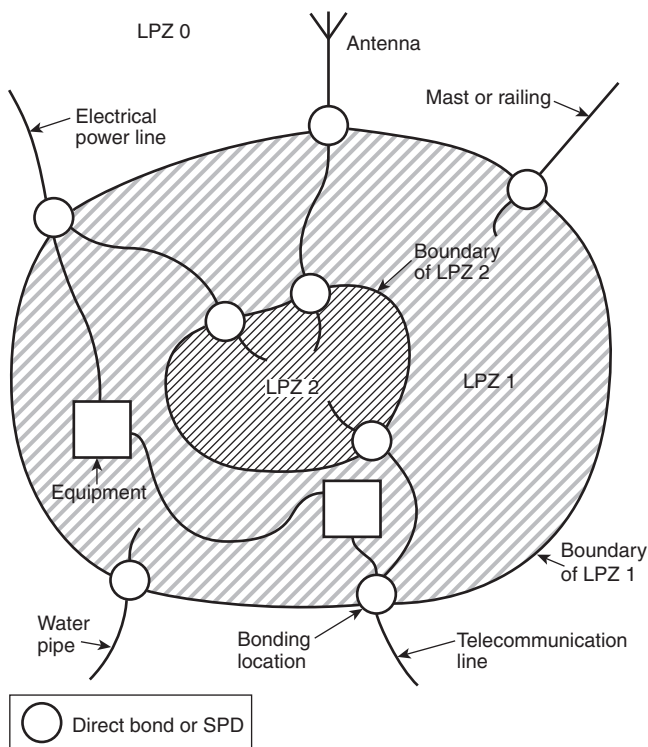


FIGURE J.5 Concept of Lightning Protection Zones. (Based on IEC 62305-4, Protection Against Lightning — Part 4: Electrical and Electronic Systems within Structures, Edition 2.)

equipment, and similar equipment. Distributed equipment typically consists of remotely actuated controllers, relays, switches with motor or lighting equipment, sensors, cameras, other computers and controller inputs among other types of equipment. These installations correspond to LPZ 1 and/or LPZ 2.

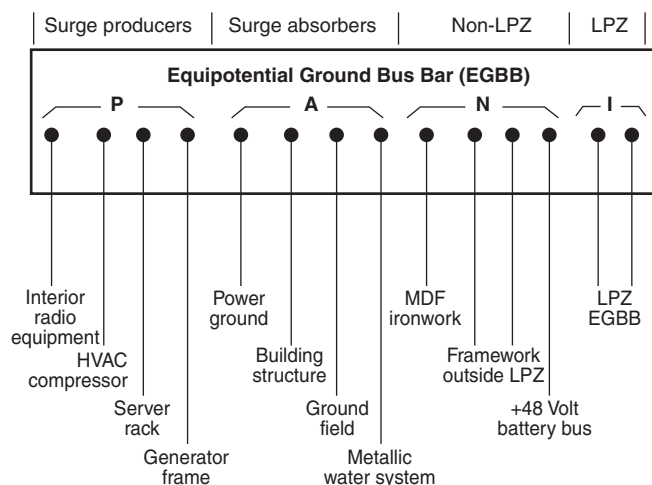
J.6.1 Equipment Rooms. It is essential to apply the lightning protection zone concept to the equipment rooms. A key feature for the protection of equipment rooms is equipotential bonding.

J.6.1.1 Equipotential Bonding. Equipotential bonding techniques serve the purpose of keeping all of the grounds at the same voltage to prevent damaging currents flowing into, or through the equipment. This subsection discusses techniques to establish effective equipotential for these installations.

J.6.1.1.1 Equipotential Ground Bus Bar. The equipotential ground bus bar (EGBB) is a single bonding point located near but external to the ac entrance switchgear or main panel. It serves as the central connection point for all grounding conductors and earth grounding electrodes. It is essential to connect all of the grounded media at a single point to avoid current flow back into or through equipment.

J.6.1.1.2 Sequencing. Sequencing of grounding conductors on the ground bus is a technique to minimize the presentation of voltages to downstream equipment, as illustrated in Figure J.6.1.1.2.

J.6.1.1.3 Lightning Protection Zone Equipotential. Equipotential of grounding conductors should be established at each LPZ boundary. At the LPZ boundary, grounding provisions of intentionally grounded equipment should make only one connection to a given ground reference, a single-point ground, which is an equipotential grounding bus bar. The LPZ is taken as a single conductive unit with all of its metallic surfaces and grounding conductors bonded together, creating equipotential. No contact with any other grounded metal, except the intentional connection to earth ground is preferred. Care to avoid incidental/unintentional metallic contact is advised. Single-point grounding is the primary concept to avoid current flow from another location in the building flowing through the



Note that the earth grounding connections are interposed between likely surge producers and the equipment grounding connections.

FIGURE J.6.1.1.2 Equipotential Ground Bus Bar.

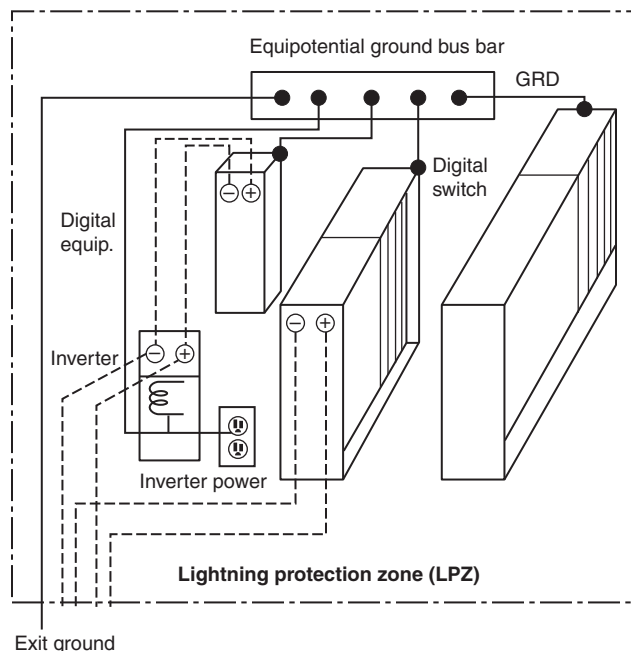


FIGURE J.6.1.1.3 Illustration of an Equipment Room.

LPZ. During external fault occurrences in the ac or dc power systems and when lightning current flows in the building, none of these currents can flow through an interior LPZ because of the single-point connection. One can envision an LPZ 2 or higher, with a single entry point for all services. Figure J.6.1.1.3 illustrates equipotential established in an LPZ.

J.6.1.1.4 Ground Transition. The ground transition is an interface between a structure's grounding system and a given LPZ. It is an interface where all ac and dc grounding conductors (including metallic raceways and other structural components) serving an LPZ make their (only) connection or transition to the building grounding system. Bonds or connections through the ground transition need to be in close proximity, 3 ft (1 m) is recommended. This is necessary to avoid voltage differences in the grounding conductors due to impedance. A useful example of a ground transition is the previously described EGBB. This serves as the ground transition for the structure, or a room within a structure, to the external utilities, where all of the grounded media in a building comes to a single point and is referenced at that point to earth ground.

J.6.1.2 Signal and Power Entry. Similarly, signal and power entries should enter and exit a structure or an equipotential LPZ at a single point, in close proximity to the ground transition. Often, this is termed the power entry panel (PEP) or signal entry panel (SEP), as appropriate. Keeping the PEP and SEP in close proximity to the ground transition and EGBB provides several advantages. This technique is conducive to placement of SPDs and minimizes grounding conductor length (thereby minimizing impedance and voltage differences) to the EGBB. It makes it easier to implement equipotential grounding and reduces the possibility of unintentional ground paths or other 'sneak circuits' to ground.

Δ J.6.2 Distributed Equipment. Distributed equipment places heavy reliance on surge protection. Section 4.19 describes surge protection arrangements for lightning protection with

additional emphasis on supplementary surge protection, in addition to entry/exit surge protection on smart structures. For example, surge protection is needed on conductors penetrating an equipotential LPZ. However, once a conductor leaves the equipotential LPZ and/or a structure, additional surge protection is needed, especially for sensitive equipment that is placed at a considerable distance from an equipotential LPZ. Distributed equipment should be installed in an equipotential LPZ rated higher than LPZ 0. A separate LPZ should be established for remotely installed equipment.

Δ J.6.2.1 Surge Propagation. Surges, or transients, induced in the conductors of a service (power or signal) are bidirectional, meaning they propagate both back to the origination of the service and to the location of the distributed equipment. A common error is to provide surge protection only at the origin of the service but not at the distributed equipment. The most common types of distributed equipment affected are cameras, gate motors, and pumps. These installations, which are typically at locations remote to a structure, have both power and signal services. It is necessary to provide common (equipotential) ground at or close to the point of utilization, which essentially establishes an LPZ for the utilization point. Both power and signal services need appropriately rated surge protection at the point of utilization.

Δ J.6.2.2 Surge Protection on Distributed Equipment Within Structures. Often, distributed equipment within a structure but outside of an LPZ needs surge protection. For example, a structure could have an LPZ established for a computer server room [which has entry surge-protective devices (SPDs)] but not for the equipment connected through telecommunications cabling to that room. More often, a structure will have entry SPDs and equipotential grounding, establishing an LPZ (LPZ 1). However, primary or entry SPDs are often not rated to intercept lower level transients and surges that can damage very sensitive equipment. The primary or entry SPD sometimes cannot be relied upon for complete protection due to the sensitivity of some equipment. Typically, this equipment includes control interfaces (touchpads), motor controllers, and cameras. Because this equipment is often sensitive to voltages lower than the voltage protection rating (VPR) of the primary SPD, and possibly that of a supplementary SPD at a service subpanel, additional SPDs should be considered at the point-of-use to protect sensitive equipment. However, where applied in multiple layers like this, coordination of the SPDs should be considered.

Δ J.6.3 Surge Protection Coordination. Where cascaded surge protection is applied to circuits, coordination of the surge protection is necessary. Often, supplementary surge protection will function at a lower voltage than primary surge protection. Because the secondary surge protection operates first upon exposure to a lower voltage, it must contain some way to limit the amount of current flowing on the internal building cable conductors within the structure between the primary surge protection and the equipment.

The objective of the secondary protection should be to transition the surge — whether it is caused by lightning or a power surge event — from the secondary to the primary surge protection, which is much more robust than the secondary protection. Equipment that has been designed to withstand the overvoltage end-of-life characteristics of primary surge protection will provide more reliable service overall.

For example, the telephone company employs a primary surge protector on signal conductors, which are generally placed at or near the entrance of the structure served. A primary surge protector, usually meeting the requirements of UL 497, *Safety Protectors for Paired-Conductor Communications Circuits*, is used if the telephone facility (cable) is exposed to possible contact with 300 V or greater. The nominal operating voltage (the voltage at which the surge protector activates) is from 265 to 350 V rms for a 100 V/sec rise time for a gas discharge tube (GDT). Impulse response (nearby induced lightning) ranges from 500 to 700 V for a 100 V/μs rise time surge. Solid-state devices (typically thyristors) have essentially the same operating response voltage for both fast and slow waveforms. However, GDTs are generally used at customer locations due to their substantially better reliability versus solid-state protectors in lightning-prone areas, such as the southeastern United States.

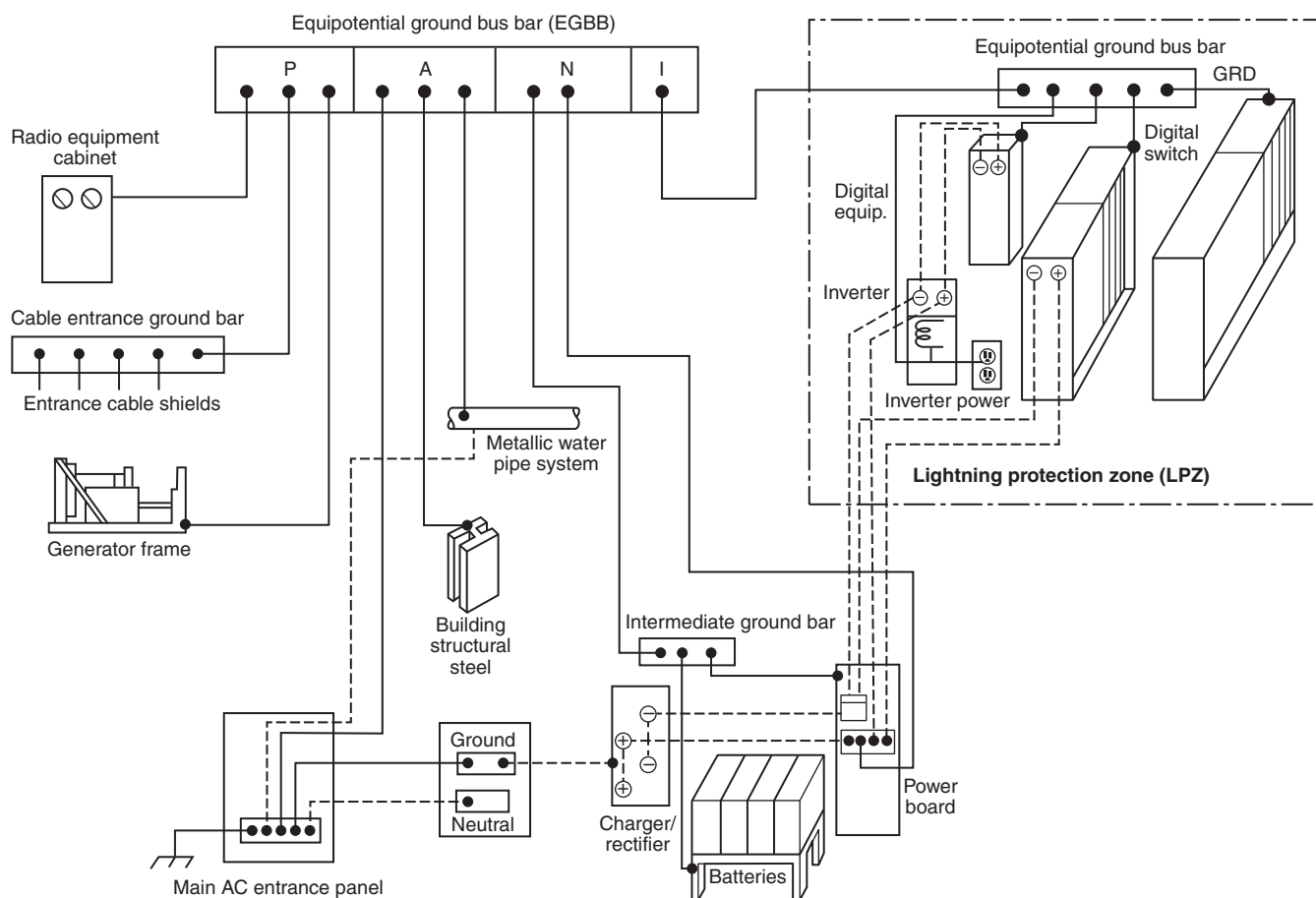
The secondary surge protector is generally an integral component of the customer's equipment (telephone set, PBX and data equipment, etc.) and is designed to operate at a substantially lower voltage than the primary surge protector. Because the secondary surge protector operates first, it must contain some method to limit the amount of current flowing on the internal building cable conductors within the structure between the primary surge protector and the equipment. Limiting the current will minimize the possibility of fusing of the internal cable conductors and/or uncontrolled component failure, which can result in a fire within customer equipment when the secondary protector operates — especially after contact with power lines (power cross).

The components used to help make the transition from the secondary to the primary surge protector can also introduce transmission impairments on the telecom circuit. Series resistance effectively lengthens the cable facility; lumped inductances can induce increased roll-off at higher frequencies, reducing bandwidth; and lumped capacitance to ground results in high-frequency roll-off. Each of these issues can significantly affect insertion loss, return loss, and balance (common mode). As required in Section 4.19, surge protectors must meet the characteristics of a protected line, particularly for signal conductors.

J.7 Grounding. Grounding methods are discussed in Section 4.12. For smart structures, robust grounding, in excess of minimum requirements is advised, particularly in areas of poor soil resistivity, as discussed in 4.12.8.

Δ J.8 Overall Smart Structure System. The overall concept of protection for a smart structure is essentially a concentric protection concept illustrated by the successive LPZ in Figure J.5. It includes equipotential bonding at a single point for structures, the EGBB. Equipotential bonding requirements should also be coordinated with the requirements of Sections 4.13–4.15. The EGBB constitutes the ground transition for the structure to external services.

Similarly, one or more equipotential LPZs can exist within the structure, each with a single-point grounding bar and ground transition to the rest of the structure, implemented at the EGBB. Through this ground transition, the EGBB is connected to a robust earth electrode system. Equipotential LPZs should be used for equipment rooms housing sensitive equipment. Coordinated surge protection will protect all boundaries of the LPZs, the structure, and the distributed equipment. Distributed equipment also must have common



▲ FIGURE J.8 Representational Diagram, Overall Power/Signal Grounding System (surge protection omitted).

equipotential grounding in close proximity to limit induced voltage differences that could cause damage. A representative system is illustrated in Figure J.8.

The best way to protect smart structure equipment is to consider protection in the design and to have an overall plan and specification for the installation based on the recommendations of this annex and the other requirements of NFPA 780. Close coordination of the various trades is needed to meet these requirements.

J.9 Applications and Examples. This section provides some examples of common applications for protection of distributed equipment associated with smart structures.

J.9.1 Remote Pole-Mounted Security Camera Outside of a Lightning Zone of Protection.

J.9.1.1 Detail. A security camera is mounted on a pole, 100 ft (30 m) or more from a standalone structure. From the structure, ac power is supplied as is a signals service. These signals include a coaxial cable for the video feed and RS-232 wiring for camera pointing control. The cabling is directly buried. These feed into a pole-mounted electrical enclosure. Within the enclosure, ac power terminates in a receptacle. The control box (where the RS-232 conductors are connected) is served with ac power from the receptacle as is a power supply to power

the camera. Wiring leaves the electrical controller and feeds into the camera and its associated controls on the pole.

J.9.1.2 Protection.

J.9.1.2.1 Surge Protection. Appropriately rated surge protectors need to be installed on all inputs to the electrical enclosure. (See Section 4.19.) Another method to reduce surges is using fiber optics wherever practicable. Surge protectors should be installed on the building end of the wiring to avoid surges backfeeding into the structure and the rest of the video and control system.

J.9.1.2.2 Shielding. Enclosing the wiring to the electrical enclosure and wiring from the enclosure to the camera is recommended to reduce lightning coupling to the wiring.

J.9.1.2.3 Equipotential Bonding. All of the grounds at the entry to the electrical enclosure should be electrically connected at a single point. (See J.6.1.1.1.)

J.9.1.2.4 Grounding. A supplementary grounding electrode should be provided at the pole/electrical enclosure. This provides the shortest path to earth ground, enhancing the performance of the SPDs and minimizes unwanted energy on the return conductors.

J.9.1.2.5 Direct Strike Protection. A lightning protection system should be installed on the pole. (See Section 5.1.) This

provides a path to intercept a direct-lightning-strike-enhancing survivability of the camera. Lightning down conductors need maximum separation from the other conductors and electrical enclosure but should be bonded to the enclosure single-point ground at the earth electrode. Using any part of the conductor shielding or the enclosure as the down conductor should be avoided.

J.9.1.3 Conclusion. Essentially the remotely located pole is treated as an independent structure, provided with its own direct strike protection, surge protection, equipotential bonding and grounding. Shielding is an additional consideration given the close proximity of conductors, equipment, and down conductors. In this case it remains essential to have all signal and power grounds bonded as well as other grounded media, such as the enclosure and the pole itself, if it is metallic. Care in design should be exercised to avoid routing the intended path of the lightning current (i.e., the down conductor) through an enclosure or shield, with bonding only at the electrode. In practice, if the pole is metallic this is less practicable, in which case the designer is counting on the lower overall impedance of the pole to provide a suitable path to earth to minimize current on the enclosure and shield. Routing the conductors within the pole can be effective, if the pole is metallic and serves as the down conductor. Alternatively, in the case of a metallic pole, nonmetallic conduit and enclosures for conductors provides improved protection against coupling effects.

J.9.2 Submersible Pump In Water Well Remote from the Protected Structure.

J.9.2.1 Detail. The submersible pump is fed by a power circuit from the structure and will likely have a disconnect switch at the well head mounted on a short metal post in the earth. The ac power circuit should either be shielded or installed in metallic conduit. The water line is often comprised of a metallic material from the well back to the structure. The well casing is often also metallic. Any of the preceding items could also be comprised of nonmetallic materials (e.g., PVC pipe or a wood post) or any combination thereof.

J.9.2.2 Protection.

J.9.2.2.1 Grounding. A grounding electrode should be placed at the location of the remote well head. The most effective grounding electrode is a buried ground ring electrode encircling the well, power entrance, and any other appurtenances at the well site. This will assist in maintaining equipotential in the well area for any remote strike transmitted through the earth.

J.9.2.2.2 Equipotential Bonding. All metal in the area of the remote well should be bonded to the ground ring electrode. This includes the well casing, water line, power circuit shielding, metallic conduit, disconnect switch housing, and any metal mounting post. Metallic shielding, conduit, and water line should also be bonded to the grounding electrode system at the protected structure to maintain continuity between grounded systems. Note: A well casing within 25 ft (7.6 m) of a protected structure is required to be interconnected to the structural lightning protection grounding electrode system using main-size lightning conductor (*see 4.13.4*).

J.9.2.2.3 Surge Protection. Surge protection should be provided at the well head. This should be placed on the load side of a disconnect switch for the submersible pump. The SPD should be located to minimize the ground lead length to the ground-

ing electrode system at the well site. The power circuit should also have an SPD where it exits the protected structure to minimize back feeding into the structure.

J.9.2.3 Conclusion. A remote well with a submersible pump requires specialized treatment for protection from the lightning hazard. This location is not typically a direct strike concern. The larger issue is the preferential ground provided by the well sunk into water. Lightning will seek the best path to the lowest potential ground point, which normally includes the submersible pump in its path. Lightning could strike the protected structure, a tree, or anywhere in the vicinity and disperse through the earth finding a metallic path to the well. The ground ring electrode is the key to providing an equipotential environment at the well site. This essentially establishes LPZ 1 around the well site. Bonding and SPDs at the remote well and the protected structure will improve survivability and buffer transitions into the structure and out to the well. It should always be considered preferable to provide shielding or metallic conduit protecting the power circuit bonded to the grounding electrode system at both ends to minimize lightning coupling to the wiring.

J.9.3 Automatic Gate Opener.

J.9.3.1 Detail. Automatic gate openers are susceptible to the threat of damage from lightning. Typically, the gate is remote from the structure it services. Power, telephone, data, and CCTV conductors are run to the gate providing electricity and communication signals for actuators, motors, cameras, card readers, key pads, motion detectors, infrared sensors, and telephones. If any of those conductors feed from sources other than the structure, a difference in potential is created between the ground at the source of that feed and the ground at the structure. When lightning energy is dissipated near the conductors, current can be injected into or induced upon those conductors. Either way, damage to the devices that control and operate the gate opener is likely.

Similarly, even if all of those conductors feed from the same building and are appropriately bonded together at the structure, damage is likely at the gate. This can happen because devices at the gate could experience different voltages on the grounding conductors of the different services if they do not have the same electrical potential; in other words, a lightning protective zone (LPZ) has not been established. In addition, the gate could be closer to the point of the lightning strike and provide an easier, shorter path for lightning energy to equalize the difference in potential between those services than the bond in the building.

For example, a telephone line is used to communicate with the phone box outside the gate and to signal the motor on the gate actuator to open the gate. The motor controller is connected to the phone line and the electric service. If the grounding conductors are not bonded to create equipotential, current will flow between the telephone ground and the electric utility ground through the motor controller. It is likely that this current will damage the controller.

J.9.3.2 Protection.

J.9.3.2.1 Direct Strike Protection. Gate structures, including separately mounted automatic gate openers, could need direct strike protection if they are not in a zone of protection in accordance with Section 4.7.